



XE

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Publication Part No. JJM 10 02 36 161
www.JagDocs.com

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which will not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If your vehicle is to be used in another geographical area, the vehicle may have to be modified to suit local conditions. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the Jaguar internet site at: <http://www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com>.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design, or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK



Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.



Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to the vehicle.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol indicates items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or the local authority.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2015.

All rights reserved.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEOS

Throughout this handbook are a selection of QR codes which, when scanned using a smartphone app, will connect the smartphone to relevant instructional videos.

Note: *These videos are best viewed using a high-speed internet or 4G connection.*

Get the free mobile app at:



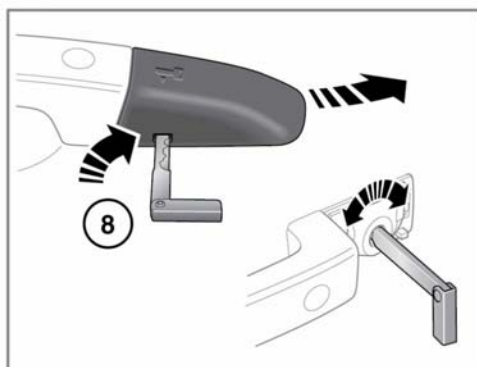
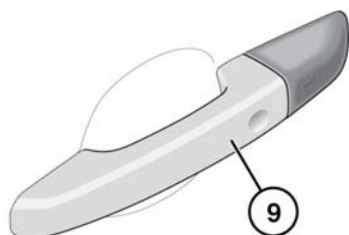
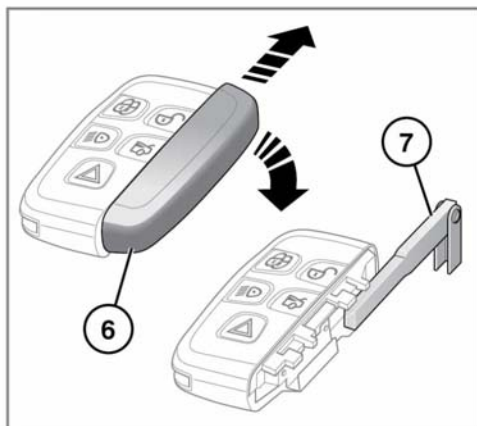
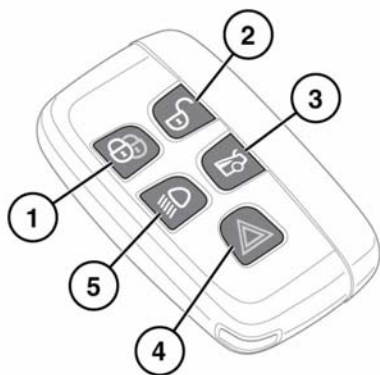
<http://gettag.mobi>

E151513

Introduction.....	2	Driving modes.....	135
Entering the vehicle.....	6	Progress control system.....	137
Exiting the vehicle.....	13	Driving aids.....	140
Front seats.....	18	Media.....	143
Rear seats.....	22	Voice control.....	153
Head restraints.....	24	Bluetooth®.....	155
Steering wheel.....	27	Telephone.....	157
Seat belts.....	29	InControl.....	159
Child safety.....	33	Navigation system.....	164
Airbags.....	40	Fuel and refuelling.....	174
Instrument panel.....	46	Maintenance.....	183
Warning lamps.....	51	Vehicle cleaning.....	200
Exterior lights.....	56	Fluid level checks.....	203
Interior lights.....	60	Vehicle battery.....	210
Wipers and washers.....	62	Fuses.....	214
Mirrors.....	65	Tyres.....	222
Blind spot monitoring.....	67	Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	229
Garage door opener.....	71	Tyre repair kit.....	231
Windows.....	73	Wheel changing.....	235
Touch screen.....	76	Vehicle recovery.....	240
Heating and ventilation.....	79	After a collision.....	243
Storage compartments.....	85	Vehicle labels.....	245
Luggage compartment.....	87	Technical specifications.....	247
Towing.....	88	Type approval.....	257
Starting the engine.....	100	Index.....	270
Intelligent stop/start.....	102	Controls overview.....	288
Gearbox.....	104		
Stability control.....	108		
Suspension.....	110		
Brakes.....	111		
Parking aids.....	115		
Park assist.....	120		
Cameras.....	124		
Automatic speed limiter (ASL).....	126		
Cruise control.....	127		
Adaptive cruise control.....	128		

Entering the vehicle

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



E170683

⚠ Any person fitted with an implanted medical device, should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 inches) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. See 255, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.

⚠ To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

Note: The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: If any of the doors, or the luggage compartment, is unlocked 10 times within a short period of time, the latch will be disabled for approximately one minute.

The vehicle is supplied with 2 Smart keys. The Smart key acts as a remote control for the vehicle's locking/unlocking systems and the alarm system. It will also allow the vehicle to be started without the use of a conventional key. See **8, KEYLESS ENTRY, 14, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **100, STARTING THE ENGINE**. Each Smart key also has an emergency key housed in a slide-out compartment.

1. Lock:

- Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See **13, SINGLE LOCKING**. See **13, DOUBLE LOCKING**.

See also **14, GLOBAL CLOSING**.

The power-fold mirrors will fold (if enabled). See **65, EXTERIOR MIRRORS**.

2. Unlock:

- Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and deactivate the alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been deactivated. The interior lamps and puddle lamps will illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle.

The power-fold mirrors will unfold (if enabled).

3. Luggage compartment release:

- Press briefly to open the luggage compartment. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the security system will remain active while the luggage compartment is open, but intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be disabled.

When closing the luggage compartment again, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash after a few seconds to confirm that the full alarm system has been reactivated. There will also be an audible sound if the vehicle was Double locked.



Make sure the Smart key does not remain in the vehicle before closing the luggage compartment. If the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference or the Smart key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.

4. Panic alarm:

- Press and hold for 3 seconds (or press 3 times within 3 seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lamps.
- Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the button and holding for 3 seconds (or pressing 3 times within 3 seconds).
- The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if a valid Smart key is present when the START/STOP button is pressed.

5. Approach illumination:

- When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to switch the approach lamps off.
- The approach illumination period, set at the factory, is 30 seconds. This delay period may be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Entering the vehicle

Note: In some markets, a second press of the button will switch on the headlamps and reversing lamps. A third press will be required to switch the lamps off.

- Emergency key access: Slide open the side cover to release, then remove.
- Remove the emergency key blade and unfold.
- If the Smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover. The door lock cover is marked with a key symbol. To release the cover, gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully twist the key blade, to lever the cover off of the retaining clips. Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm will sound. To disarm the alarm, see **101, KEYLESS START BACKUP**.

Note: When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top two retaining lugs before pushing the cover down and inwards to locate the single bottom lug. The lug will click into the locked position. Check the security of the cover. An insecure cover is likely to fall off while the vehicle is moving.

Note: When the driver's door is unlocked using the key blade, the alarm will sound until the Smart key is positioned correctly.

Note: A replacement Smart key can be obtained only from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The Dealer/Authorised Repairer will require proof of identification and ownership.

Notify a Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately if a Smart key is lost or stolen.

- Keyless entry/exit:
 - Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

SINGLE/MULTI-POINT ENTRY

The Smart key unlock button will unlock the vehicle in one of two ways:

- Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler flap only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the luggage compartment.
- Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors, the fuel filler flap and the luggage compartment, on the first press.

To change from Single to Multi-point entry (or vice versa), press both the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the change.

This **2-Stage Unlocking** feature can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

KEYLESS ENTRY



The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or when starting the vehicle.

Note: Make sure that the Smart key is within 1.0 m (3 feet) of the vehicle.

The Smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, it does not need to be exposed or handled.

The keyless unlocking sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door, then the vehicle will unlock and the alarm system will also be disarmed.

Note: *Keyless entry will unlock the vehicle in accordance with the current security setting (Single-point or Multi-point entry). However, if Single-point entry is the current setting and a door, other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.*

When all of the open doors have been closed, after entering the vehicle, the system will search the vehicle's interior for a valid Smart key. If a valid Smart key is not detected, **SMART KEY NOT FOUND** will be displayed in the Message centre. If this situation occurs, then use a valid Smart key to carry out the Keyless start backup procedure. See **101, KEYLESS START BACKUP**.

The security system fitted to this vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved and meets EU regulations 97/116 and EU directive 95/56 EC.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173308

CONVENIENCE MODE

When a door is opened using either the Smart key or Keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system will initiate the Convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Driver's seat position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Message centre.
- Auxiliary power sockets.

GLOBAL OPENING

Press and hold the unlock button on the Smart key for 3 seconds. The vehicle will unlock and the alarm will be disarmed. After 3 seconds, all of the windows and the sunroof will open.

To stop window movement during Global opening when using the Smart key, press any of the buttons on the Smart key or operate the driver's window switch. To stop a particular window from opening, operate the relevant window switch.

Note: *Windows Global Open can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.*

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle is in motion. This feature can be enabled/disabled and the speed at which it activates can be selected, via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *Pressing the unlock/lock lever on either of the front doors, after Drive-away locking has taken place, will override Drive-away locking for the current journey. See **13, DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS**.*

If a door is individually unlocked and opened, all of the doors will relock when the open door is subsequently closed.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

The electric steering column lock will lock/unlock when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

If the steering column fails to unlock, a message will be displayed in the Message centre. If this occurs, then gently rotate the steering wheel to the left and the right.

Entering the vehicle

Note: This situation may occur if the steering column is under load; e.g., the vehicle is parked with the steering on full lock and the steering wheel position inadvertently presses a front tyre against a kerb.

Note: If an engine start request is initiated, the engine will start, once the steering column is unlocked. See **100, STARTING THE ENGINE.**

If the steering column still does not unlock, then lock and unlock the vehicle again using the Smart key.

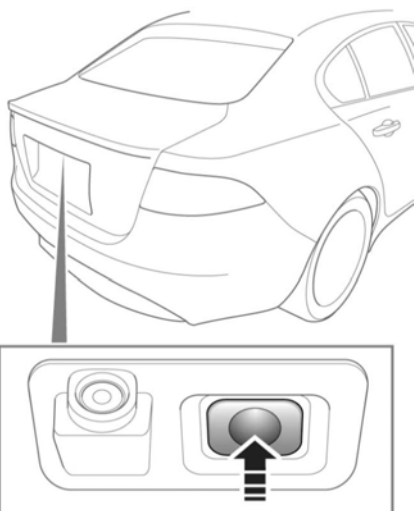
If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

- ❗ Do not open the luggage compartment if a cycle rack is fitted. Remove any cycles and/or racks before opening the luggage compartment.
- ❗ The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console, etc.
- ❗ The vehicle must not be driven with the luggage compartment lid unlatched and not completely closed.
- ❗ Any items placed in the luggage compartment should be arranged to allow the lid to be completely closed and securely latched.



Do not repeatedly attempt to close the luggage compartment after it automatically re-opens, or the latch may overheat. If the cause of the automatic re-opening cannot be determined, then unlock all of the doors and the luggage compartment with the Smart key. Make sure that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the luggage compartment are completely closed and then lock the vehicle again with the Smart key.



E165895

To open the luggage compartment, press the luggage compartment exterior release button (arrowed), if the vehicle is not locked. Alternatively, press the relevant Smart key button. See **6, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE.**

To close the luggage compartment, lower the luggage compartment lid to the fully latched/closed position.



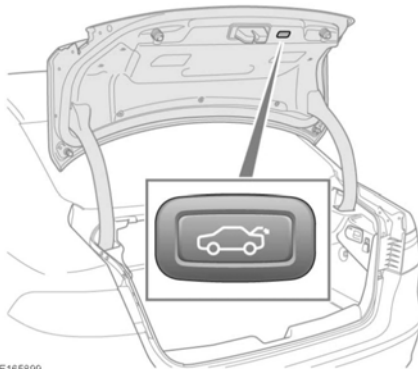
E165900

Powered luggage compartments can also be opened by pressing the interior release button, located on the driver's side lower facia. When the lid is fully open, press the button again to close.

Note: If the button is pressed again, before the luggage compartment lid is fully open, then movement of the lid will stop.



While the powered luggage compartment is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.



E165899

Powered luggage compartments can also be closed by pressing the luggage compartment close button.

Note: If an obstruction is detected, the powered luggage compartment lid will return to the fully open position. Remove any obstruction and then press the close button again.

If the luggage compartment lid is opened, after the vehicle has been Single locked (see **13, SINGLE LOCKING**) or Double locked (see **13, DOUBLE LOCKING**), then make sure that the Smart key remains outside of the vehicle and is less than one metre away from the rear of the vehicle, so that the luggage compartment lid will then lock again after closing. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm.

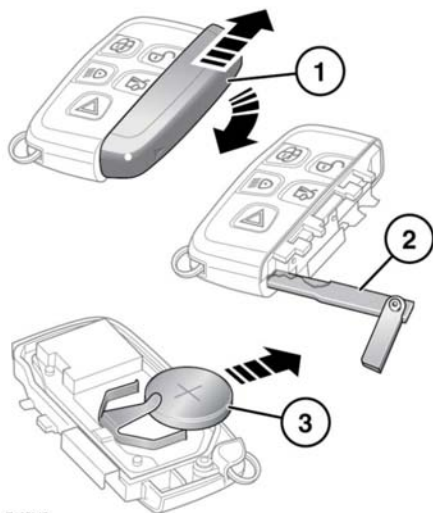
If a valid Smart key is detected within the vehicle, or a valid Smart key is not detected within a metre of the rear of the vehicle, then the luggage compartment lid will re-open to the unlatched position and an audible mislock warning will sound. This may also prevent the operation of the close button, for vehicles with a powered luggage compartment lid.

Note: Do not store any valid Smart keys inside the vehicle.

Entering the vehicle

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range of the Smart key and the message **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** will be displayed in the Message centre.



To replace the battery:

1. Slide the cover to release and then pull to remove.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the Smart key's body.
3. Fit a new **CR2032** type battery (available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer), with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note: Only handle the outer edge of a new battery. Avoid touching the top and bottom faces of a new battery, as skin moisture/oil can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts. If skin contact is made, then clean with a lint-free cloth.

Note: If the low battery warning does not extinguish, this indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.

Refit the parts in the reverse order, making sure that they click securely into place.



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or a local authority.

SMART KEY CARE



To prevent accidental operation, which may result in an injury, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.



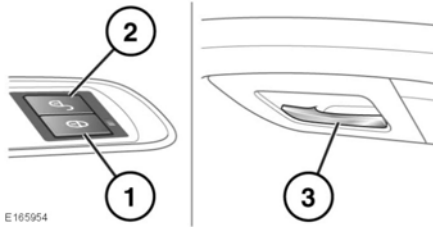
Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, or humidity, or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label, which should be peeled off and affixed to the correct area in the vehicle's service book, supplied in the owner's literature pack. Keep the service book safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the Smart key may be used by other devices; e.g., medical equipment. This may prevent the Smart key from operating correctly.

DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



1. Press the lock button to lock the vehicle.
2. Press the unlock button to unlock the vehicle.
3. Pull the door lever to unlock/release the door. Operating the door lever on either front door will unlock all of the doors.

Note: If the car was locked using the Smart key, then operating the door lever will only unlock/release that door and the alarm will sound.

Note: If the vehicle has been Double locked, then the interior door levers will not operate. The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart key.

SINGLE LOCKING

Briefly press the external door handle's keyless locking sensor, or the Smart key's lock button, to Single lock the vehicle and activate the Perimeter alarm. See **15, PERIMETER ALARM**. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm.

Note: Do not place your fingers around the back of the door handle while touching the keyless locking sensor. Doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking, as the keyless unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors and the luggage compartment being opened from outside of the vehicle. The doors can be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Note: Always secure the vehicle when left unattended. Where possible, always secure the vehicle to the maximum available level of security.

DOUBLE LOCKING



Never Double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Press the external door handle keyless locking sensor, or the Smart key lock button, twice within 3 seconds to Double lock the vehicle and activate the Full alarm system. See **15, FULL ALARM**. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm and (if enabled) an audible lock warning will sound.

Note: Do not place your fingers around the back of the door handle while touching the keyless locking sensor. Doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking.

Note: The **Audible Lock Warning** can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors and the luggage compartment being unlocked or opened from inside or outside of the vehicle. The vehicle can only be unlocked with the correct Smart key.

Exiting the vehicle

When the vehicle is Double locked, an open window or an open sunroof will (if enabled) cause the alarm sensors to activate the alarm system, due to the movement of air currents. Make sure that all of the windows and the sunroof are fully closed before Double locking the vehicle.

Note: The **Alarm Sensors** can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed (either by Single or Double locking), press the Smart key lock button and the hazard warning lamps will flash to indicate the current status; once for Single lock and twice for Double lock.

Note: If the vehicle is not already locked and armed, pressing the Smart key lock button will Single lock the vehicle, press the lock button again within 3 seconds to Double lock.

MISLOCK

When trying to lock the vehicle with the Smart key, an audible mislock warning will sound twice if:

- Any of the doors, luggage compartment or bonnet are open or not securely latched.
- A malfunction of a lock or latch is detected.
- The ignition is on.

If a mislock occurs, then check the vehicle and if the problem persists consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Operating the interior or exterior door handles, while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status of the vehicle (including Drive-away locking), may cause the security system to ignore any unlock, lock, or child lock requests.

GLOBAL CLOSING



Make sure that no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating Global closing.

Make sure that all of the doors are closed and securely latched, then press and hold the lock button on the Smart key for 3 seconds. Alternatively, press and hold the external door handle keyless locking sensor for 3 seconds. The vehicle will Single lock and the alarm system will be fully armed immediately. After 3 seconds, all of the windows and the sunroof will close.

Note: Do not place your fingers around the back of the door handle while touching the keyless locking sensor. Doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking.

Note: If the Smart key's lock button, or the external door handle's keyless locking sensor, is released before the windows and the sunroof have fully closed, then the windows and the sunroof will stop closing.

Note: **Windows Global Close** can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

KEYLESS LOCKING

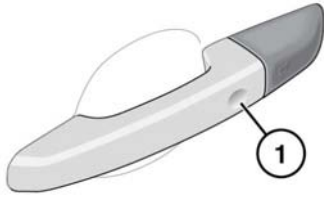


Remove all the valid Smart keys and emergency key blades from the vehicle when it is left unattended. This will help to prevent the alarm from being disarmed, and therefore, help to prevent theft.



The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console, etc.

Note: The vehicle will not lock automatically.



E196657

To Single lock the vehicle, touch only the keyless locking sensor (1) once, without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lamps will flash once, as confirmation (in some markets, an audible warning will sound).

To Double lock the vehicle, touch only the keyless locking sensor (1) twice within 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice (with a long second flash), and (if enabled) an audible lock warning will sound.

Note: Do not place your fingers around the back of the door handle while touching the keyless locking sensor. Doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking, as the keyless unlocking sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle.

Note: The **Audible Lock Warning** can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: Keyless locking will only activate if all of the doors, the bonnet, and the luggage compartment are closed securely and the Smart key is outside of the vehicle.

FULL ALARM



No modifications or additions should be made to the alarm system. Such changes could cause this system to malfunction.

Double lock the vehicle to activate the Full alarm system. See **13, DOUBLE LOCKING** and **14, KEYLESS LOCKING**.

The Full alarm system is the maximum level of security for the vehicle. It consists of:

- The Perimeter alarm.
- A Battery-backed sounder.
- A Tilt sensor.
- An Intrusion sensor.

PERIMETER ALARM

Single lock the vehicle to activate the Perimeter alarm system. See **13, SINGLE LOCKING** and **14, KEYLESS LOCKING**.

The Perimeter alarm system is the minimum level of security for the vehicle.

BATTERY-BACKED SOUNDER

In certain markets, a separate Battery-backed sounder is fitted. This device will sound the alarm if the vehicle's battery or the alarm sounder is disconnected when the security system is armed.

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm has been triggered, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the Smart key.
- Opening a door using Keyless entry.
- Pressing the **START/STOP** button with a valid Smart key present.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the Message centre via the **Vehicle Info** and **Last Alarm** menus. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Exiting the vehicle

TILT SENSOR

The Tilt sensor detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is Double locked, a significant change in the vehicle's angle will activate the alarm.

Note: *The Tilt sensor is an alarm sensor. The Alarm Sensors can be enabled/disabled (for one alarm cycle only) via the Vehicle Set-up menu. See 47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.*

INTRUSION SENSOR

The Intrusion sensor detects an intrusion into the cabin area. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is Double locked, an intrusion into the cabin through the windows will activate the alarm.

Note: *The Intrusion sensor is an alarm sensor. The Alarm Sensors can be enabled/disabled (for one alarm cycle only) via the Vehicle Set-up menu. See 47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.*

PASSIVE ARMING

In some markets, the vehicle is fitted with a Passive arming feature which can, if enabled, automatically arm the anti-theft system. Passive arming will automatically arm the Perimeter alarm system 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, provided that all of the other doors, the bonnet and the luggage compartment are also closed. The ignition must also be switched off with no valid Smart keys inside the vehicle.

Passive arming will not lock the vehicle, although access to the luggage compartment via the interior or exterior release buttons will be prevented and the fuel filler flap will be locked.



Passive arming can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

AUTOMATIC RELOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

Automatic relocking and re-arming is a feature which, if enabled, automatically relocks the vehicle and arms the anti-theft system.

If the vehicle is in a locked and armed state and the Smart key unlock button is pressed, but none of the doors or the luggage compartment are opened within 40 seconds, then the vehicle automatically relocks all of the doors and the luggage compartment, and re-arms the alarm system. This will also occur if the Smart key is detected and a door handle is grabbed to operate the keyless unlock sensor. See 8, KEYLESS ENTRY.

Note: *Automatic relocking and re-arming will only relock to a Single locked state. If the vehicle was previously Double locked, then the alarm sensors will also re-arm.*

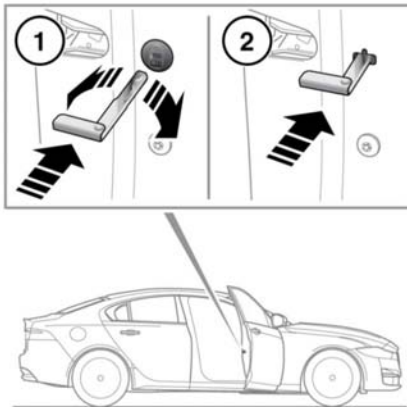


Automatic relocking and re-arming can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SENSOR FAULTS

If the security systems detect a fault with one of the security sensors, 2 error tones will sound from the alarm after the vehicle is unlocked and disarmed. If this condition occurs, then consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for rectification.

EMERGENCY LOCKING



E166027

In the event of the battery discharging, or a fault with the Keyless locking system, each of the doors must be locked manually.

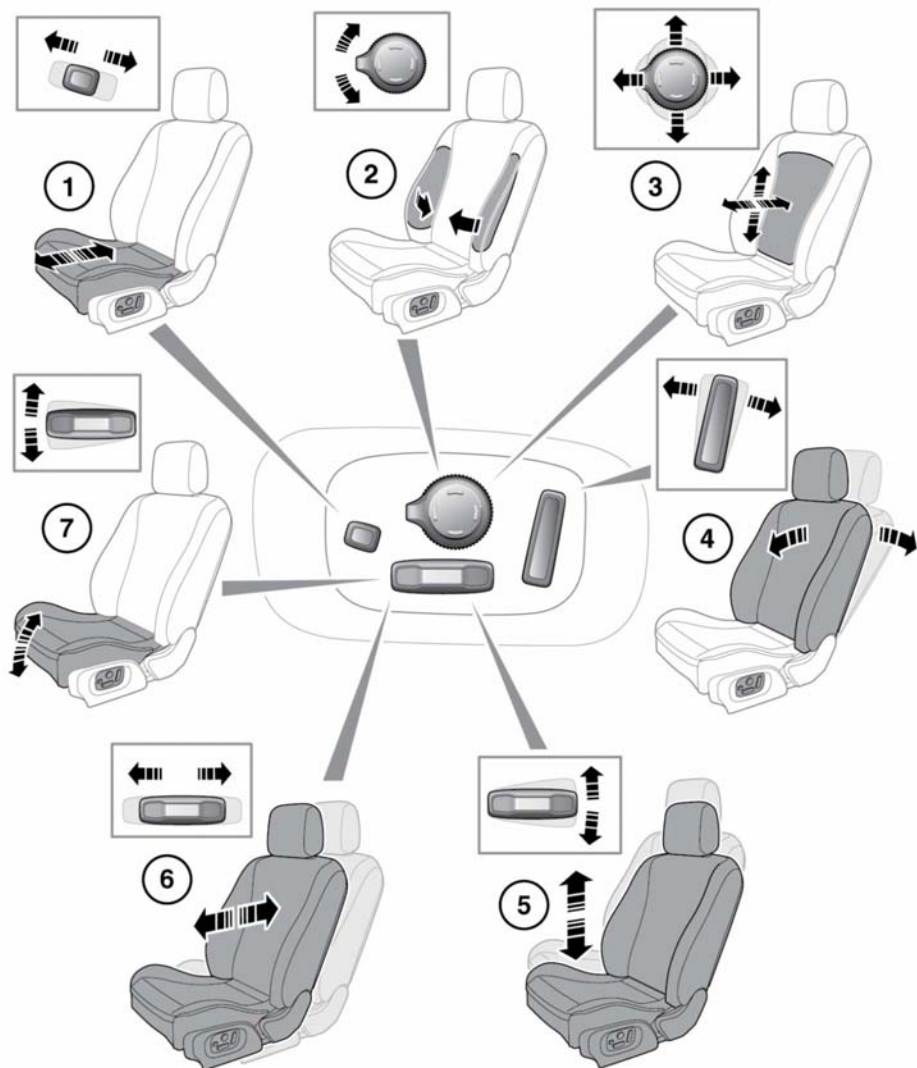
The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **6, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

Note: Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.

1. Open a door and locate the emergency lock access cover. Using the emergency key blade, rotate the cover counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove it from the door.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock.
The emergency key blade can now be removed.
3. Refit the emergency lock access cover and rotate it clockwise to secure it firmly.
4. Close the door and check that it is locked.
Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

Front seats

ELECTRIC SEATS



E164795



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Cushion length adjustment.
2. Bolster adjustment (inflate/deflate).

3. Lumbar support adjustment.
 - Press the top of the button to raise.
 - Press the bottom of the button to lower.
 - Press the middle front of the button to inflate.
 - Press the middle rear of the button to deflate.
4. Seatback angle adjustment.
5. Height adjustment.
6. Forward and rearward adjustment.
7. Cushion front tilt adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the Smart key must be in the vehicle and the ignition switched on.

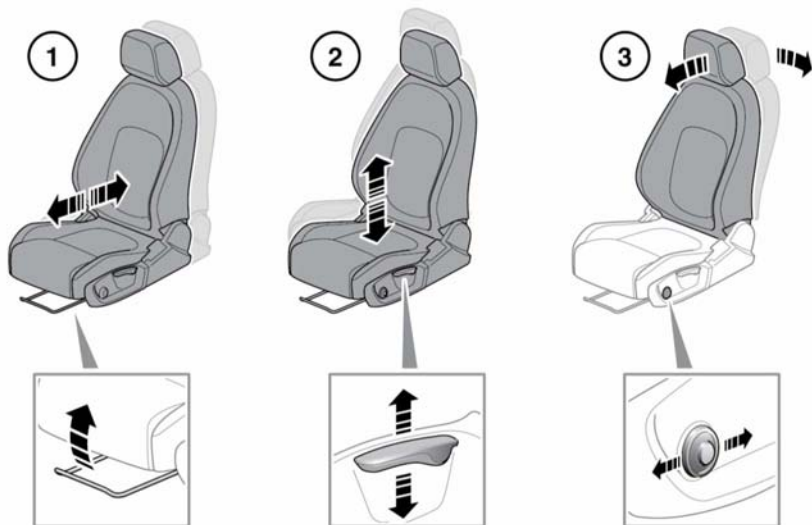
If an obstruction is encountered while the seat is in motion, the seat will stop moving and further movement will be restricted until reset.

To reset the seat:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where the movement was restricted.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

Front seats

MANUAL SEATS

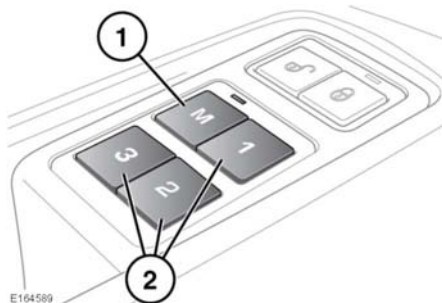


E171172

⚠ Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Seat height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY



E164589

1. Memory set button.
2. Memory presets.

After adjustment of the driver's seat, steering column and the exterior mirrors, the vehicle can memorise these settings using the driver's door memory buttons. See **27, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and **65, EXTERIOR MIRRORS**.

1. Press the memory set button (**M**) to activate the memory function. The LED indicator lamp will illuminate to confirm.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. **MEMORY 1 (2 or 3) SETTINGS SAVED** will be displayed in the Message centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been memorised.

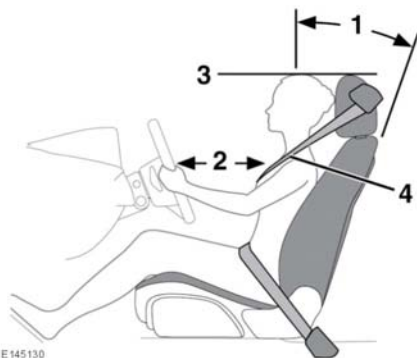
A seat position can only be memorised during the 5 second period.

Any existing settings, for a previous memory preset, will be over-written when programming a new memory position.

RECALLING A MEMORISED POSITION

Press the appropriate memory preset button. **MEMORY 1 (2 or 3) SETTINGS RECALLED** will be displayed in the Message centre.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



E 145130



The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user.



Correct use of these components will give you greater protection, therefore, you should always observe the following points:

1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of your spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm (10 inches) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with your arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is the same height as the top of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.




Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

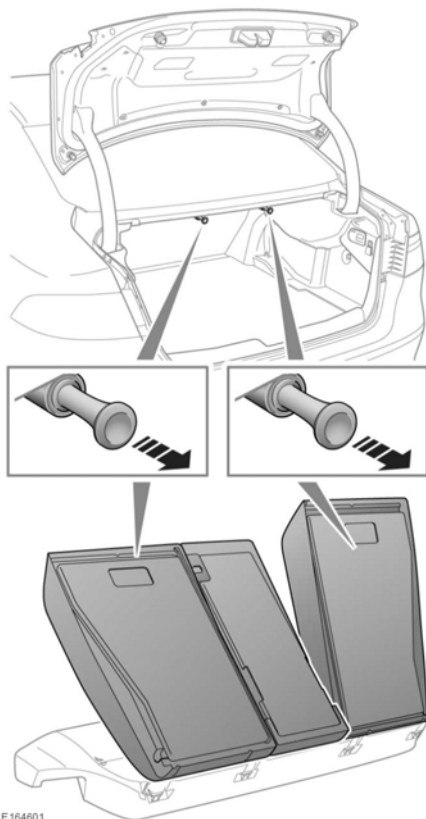
Rear seats

REAR SEAT SAFETY

-  Never allow passengers to travel in the Luggage compartment under any circumstances.
-  All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and must wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS

-  All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. See 87, LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden manoeuvre.
-  When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure that the belts are not damaged or exposed to sharp edges.
-  Always take note of safety warnings and labels attached to the rear seats. The labels give advice on safely folding and raising the seats.



E 164601

Note: The folding rear seats are not available on all vehicles. It is dependent on the vehicle specification.

1. Open the luggage compartment.
2. Pull the relevant seat release cable handle.
3. Fold the seatback forwards and, if required, repeat the process for the other seat section.



E165585

The middle seatback can also be released separately. Press and hold the button to release and then fold the middle seatback forward.

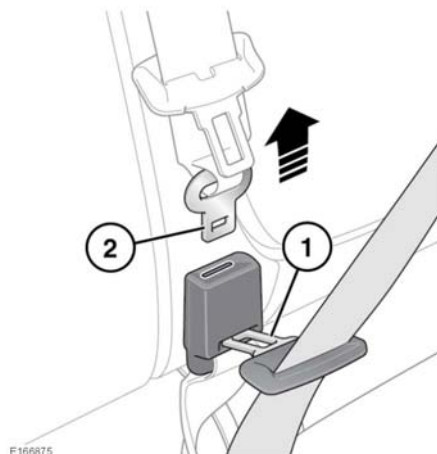
⚠ Before folding a rear seat, make sure that the seat is not occupied and that no person has any part of their body on the seat cushion. The rear seatbacks are spring loaded and could cause personal injury or damage when released.

ⓘ Make sure that when the seatbacks are raised, the seat belts are routed correctly in front of the seatback and are not trapped by the seatbacks or the locking mechanism. Failure to do this may cause damage to the seat belt, which could also result in a new seat belt being required.

⚠ Make sure that when the seatbacks are raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged.

⚠ Before driving, make sure that the head restraints are fitted and correctly adjusted for each seat's occupant. See 24, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS.

Rear centre seat belt release



E166875


The rear centre seat belt can be released from its buckle, before folding the rear seatback/s, to allow for improved access to the Luggage compartment.


Use the seat belt tongue (1), from a rear outboard seat, to press the centre seat buckle's release button. The centre seat belt will then fully retract (2).

⚠ Make sure that the rear centre seat belt is correctly refitted to the buckle when the rear seatback/s have been returned to the raised position.


Head restraints

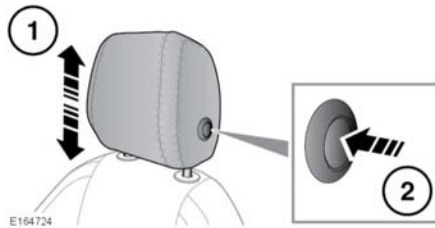
FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

 Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

 While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is the same height as the top of the seat occupant's head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

 Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

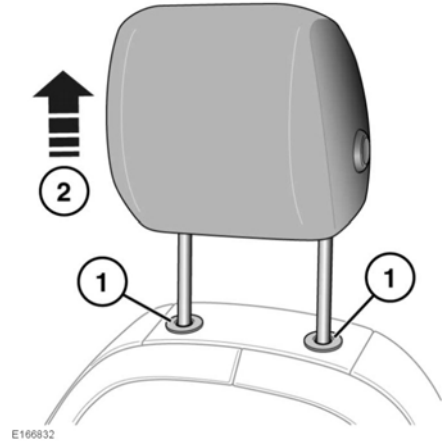
 Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.



1. To raise, pull the head restraint upwards. It will click and lock in to position.

Note: Do not try to raise the head restraint further than the third adjustment position.

2. To lower, press and hold the button on the side of the head restraint, then push down.



E166832


To remove the head restraint, raise the head restraint to its uppermost position.

1. Press and hold the seatback socket, on each side of the head restraint.
2. With the aid of a second person, lift the head restraint out of the seatback.


 Always store a removed head restraint securely.


To refit the head restraint:

1. Make sure that the head restraint is facing the correct direction.
2. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the seatback sockets and then push it downwards, until at least the first click.


 Adjust the head restraint to suit the seat occupant.


REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

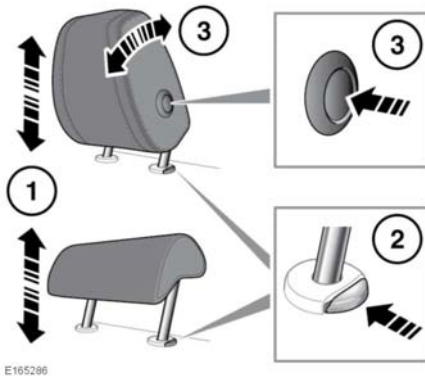
 Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

 While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is the same height as the top of the seat occupant's head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

 Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

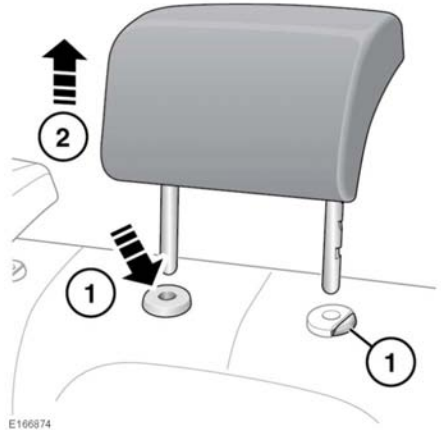
 It is possible to swivel the head restraint forwards or backwards. For greater protection in the event of a collision, the head restraint should be adjusted, so that it is as close to the back of the seat occupant's head as is practical.

 Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.



1. To raise, pull the head restraint upwards, it will click and lock in to position.
2. To lower, press and hold the locking collar, then push down on the head restraint.

3. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press and hold the button on the side of the restraint, then rotate to the desired position.



To remove the head restraint, raise the head restraint to its uppermost position.

Note: If the head restraint's angle can be adjusted, then rotate to the fully forward position.

1. Press in the locking collar, while also pressing down and holding the seatback socket.
2. With the aid of a second person, lift the head restraint out of the seatback.

 **Always store a removed head restraint securely.**

To refit the head restraint:

1. Make sure that the head restraint is facing the correct direction.
2. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the seatback sockets and then push it downwards, until at least the first click.


Head restraints



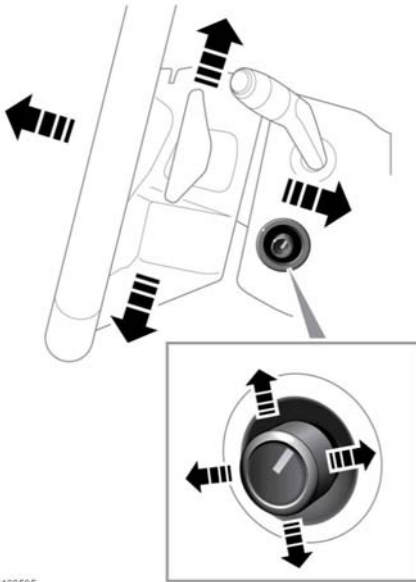
Adjust the head restraint to suit the seat occupant.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

 **Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving.**

 Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices on vehicles with electrically operated steering columns. Movement of the steering column in Exit and entry mode, could result in damage to the vehicle or possible injury to the occupant.

Electric steering column



E160595

Vehicles with an electric steering column, can be adjusted to alter the tilt and reach of the steering wheel:

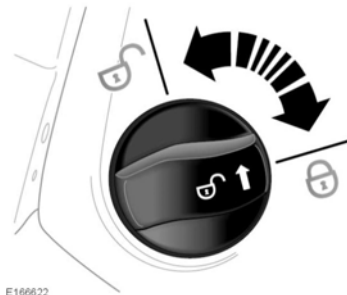
- **Note:** *The electrically operated steering column will continue to move until the control is released or until the steering column reaches either of its minimum or maximum positions.*

Move the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the reach of the steering wheel.

- Move the switch up or down to adjust the tilt of the steering wheel.

Up to 3 steering wheel positions can be stored and recalled, along with the seat and exterior mirror positions, by the driving position memory. See **20, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

Manual steering column



E160622

Vehicles with a manual steering column, can be adjusted to alter the tilt and reach of the steering wheel:

- To unlock the steering column, rotate the control counter-clockwise until the endstop is reached.
- Manually adjust the steering column to the desired reach/tilt position of the steering wheel.
- To lock the steering column, rotate the control clockwise until the endstop is reached.

Note: *An audible click will confirm locking of the steering column.*

Steering wheel

ENTRY AND EXIT MODE



E166543

With the electric steering column control in the **AUTO** position, the steering column will move to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle.

On opening the driver's door, the system will raise the steering column to the highest position, assisting with exit from the vehicle. When the driver's door is closed and the ignition switched on, the system will return the steering column to the previous position.

Note: If the steering column is adjusted during entry or exit operation, automatic movement will stop.

To prevent automatic movement of the steering column, turn the control clockwise to the alternative position.

Note: If the steering column switch is moved away from **AUTO** when the steering column is in the exit position, the steering column will move back to its previous position when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

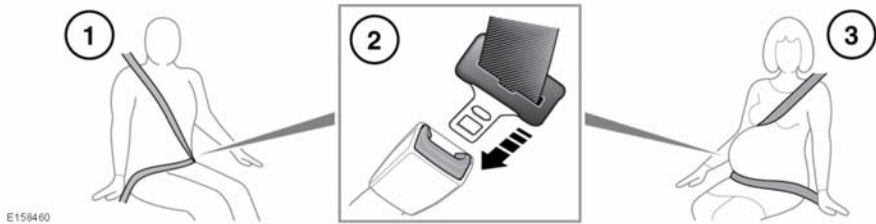
HEATED STEERING WHEEL



E149544

To activate the heated steering wheel, press the switch. Press again to switch off.

USING THE SEAT BELTS



E158460

1. **Putting on a seat belt:** Draw the belt out smoothly, make sure the seat and your position on the seat, are correct. When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of your shoulder. Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.
2. **Fastening a seat belt:** With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard. To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note: When releasing the seat belt it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.
3. **Seat belt use during pregnancy:** Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.



Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.





Do not use comfort clips or devices that would create slack in the seat belt system.





No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.


Seat belts


 Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.


 Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer. Make sure that any belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce slack.

 Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

 Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's neck will strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted and with the seatbacks upright.

 The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. It does not replace them. Seat belts must always be worn.


 Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

 Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.


SEAT BELT SAFETY

Each seat in the vehicle will have a dedicated seat belt. Each seat belt is designed for an individual seat occupant, aged older than 12 years, or with a body mass greater than 36 kg (80 lb). Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See **35, CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**.

All the seat belts (except for the rear centre seat belt) are equipped with a Load limiter. This will help to regulate the over tension of a seat belt in a severe impact, to help reduce the possibility of injury to the occupant.

 A seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

 It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

 If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.



Seat belts should be inspected or replaced by qualified personnel only. All replacement parts should be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the vehicle's seat belts, doing so may render the seat belts as ineffective.



Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.



When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, take care to make sure that the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.



Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt. In an impact, the pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts or wear to the webbing, and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT REMINDER

A front and rear Seat belt reminder system warns the driver when the seat belt of an occupied seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a trip.

Seat belt reminder commences when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's belt is unbuckled. Dependent on market, the warning indicator in the Instrument panel illuminates (see **52, SEAT BELT (RED)**), and an audible chime sounds. The visual and audible warnings applicable to the Seat belt reminder feature are market dependent to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change depending on whether the vehicle is stationary or when the vehicle's speed exceeds a predetermined threshold. In certain markets, the Seat belt reminder feature also applies to the passenger seat.



E165348

A graphic in the Message centre also indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey and also when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.

Each seating position is represented by a passenger icon, the colour and symbol of which indicates the seat belt status:

- Tick - seat belt in the indicated position is fastened.
- Cross - seat belt in the indicated position has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is on. This indicator will turn grey after 30 seconds.
- Grey - seat belt not fastened.

Note: *The indicators will be displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, e.g., a seat belt is unfastened/fastened, or a door is opened and then closed.*

In addition, an audible warning will sound if the driver's, or any occupied passenger's seat belt is not fastened, or is unfastened during a journey.

Note: *If a heavy object is placed on a passenger seat, it may activate the Seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that the object be placed in the luggage compartment or secured using the seat belt.*

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The Seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce the forward movement of a seat occupant.

Note: *The rear middle seat is not fitted with a seat belt pre-tensioner.*

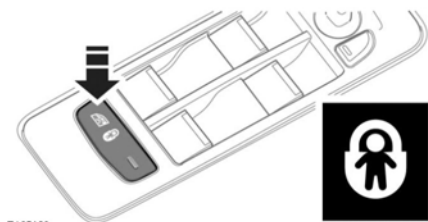


The Seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.



After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS




E165429

If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

Press the button on the driver's door, to activate the child door locks and to also inhibit the rear windows. The button's LED indicator lamp will illuminate when active and a confirmation message will also be displayed in the Message centre.

To deactivate, press the button again. The LED lamp will extinguish and a confirmation message will also be displayed in the Message centre.

CHILD SEATS

 For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rear-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.



Do not use a forward-facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.



Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of death or serious injury in a crash.



Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.



Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.


If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national legislation permits this), Jaguar recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint.

- Disable the front passenger airbag. See **42, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG.**

Child safety

- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion angle adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.

 **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

 **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**



E132397

This symbol, affixed to the front door B-post on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.



E145193

This symbol, affixed to the passenger side sun-visor, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every journey.
- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX/i-Size seat (If applicable to seat type).
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible, replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.
- For some child seats it may be necessary to remove the head restraint to make sure of a stable fit. Always refit a removed head restraint after the child seat is removed.



Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING



The information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest recommendation.

***Note:** The information contained in the following table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

***Note:** The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.*

Mass group	Seating positions		
	Front passenger*	Rear outboard	Rear centre
0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) 0 to 9 months	U	U	X
0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb.) 0 to 18 months	U	U	X
I = 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb.) 9 months to 4 years	U	U	X
II = 15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb.) 4 to 9 years	U	U	X
III = 22 to 36 kg (49 to 80 lb.) 8 to 12 years	U	U	X

- **U** = Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- **UF** = Suitable for forward-facing universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- **X** = Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

* Always make sure that the front passenger airbag is disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **42, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**. The front passenger seat should be positioned fully rearward, the seat cushion to its highest position and the seatback adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint. If the head restraint has been removed, make sure that it is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

***Note:** Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.*

Child safety

 **Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.**

When installing a child seat in the rear, the front seat must be moved forward and upwards to install any rear-facing child seat. Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants will be reduced by the installation of any rearward-facing child seat.


RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS


Child size/age	Recommended seat ISOFIX Positions	Recommended seat Non ISOFIX Positions
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus With Baby-Safe ISOFIX Base	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax/Römer Kid Plus	Britax/Römer Kid Plus


BOOSTER SEATS


In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat, but is still too small to safely fit the 3-point belt properly, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

ISOFIX AND I-SIZE ANCHOR POINTS

 **Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX or i-Size child restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint in this position.**

 **If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.**

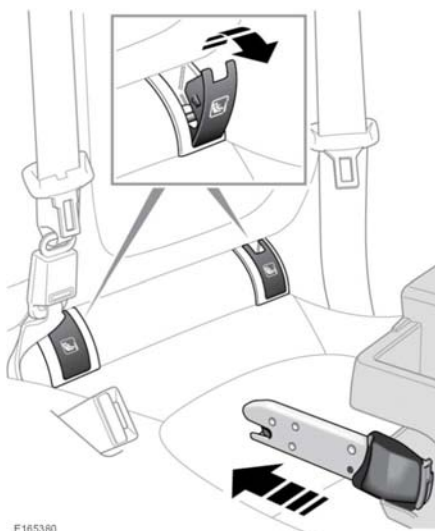
 **If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it. Always refit a removed head restraint after the child restraint is removed.**

 **WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

Both of the outer rear seat positions are equipped to accept ISOFIX and i-Size child restraints.



This symbol is shown, on the removable access cover, to indicate the position of the ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchorages.



E165380

To install an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint:

1. Raise the head restraint on the relevant rear outer seat position.
2. Locate the recess at the top of each access cover, lightly pull forward to release and remove. This will now allow access to the vehicle's lower anchor bars.

Note: Store the access covers safely and refit when the child restraint is removed from the vehicle.

3. Slide the child restraint locking mechanism onto the vehicle's anchor bars and then push the child restraint towards the rear of the vehicle, to make sure of complete engagement.

4. Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the child restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the child restraint from side to side. Even if the child restraint appears secure, you should always check the anchor points visually to confirm correct attachment.



If the child restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

Note: Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

Note: For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.

ISOFIX child restraint system seating positions

Mass group as shown on the child restraint	Size classes	Fixtures	Second row outboard seats	Recommended child restraint system
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	X	-
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) 0 to 9 months	E	ISO/R1	IL	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus with Baby-Safe ISOFIX Base
0+ Up to 13 kg (29 lb.) 0 to 18 months	E	ISO/R1	IL	
	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	-
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb.) 9 months to 4 years	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	-
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	Britax/Römer Baby Duo Plus
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	
II/III 15 to 36 kg (33 to 80 lb.) 4 to 12 years	-	-	-	-

Child safety

- **IUF** = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category, approved for use in this mass group.
- **IL** = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

- **X** = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.


i-Size child restraint system seating positions


Seating position				
	Front Passenger	Rear outboard left	Rear outboard right	Rear centre
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U	i-U	X


- **i-U** = Suitable for i-Size universal child restraint systems, forward and rearward facing.
- **X** = Seating position not suitable for i-Size universal child restraint systems.

Always fit the upper tether anchorage and tighten correctly.

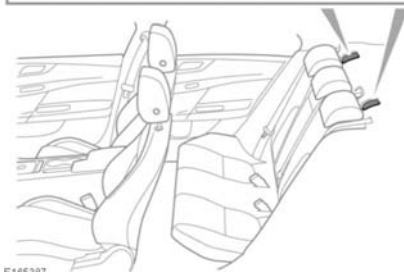
INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS


 Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

 Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.

 When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seat back and beneath the head restraint.

The vehicle is equipped with tether anchorage points, located behind the top of the second row seatback frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or child restraint systems.



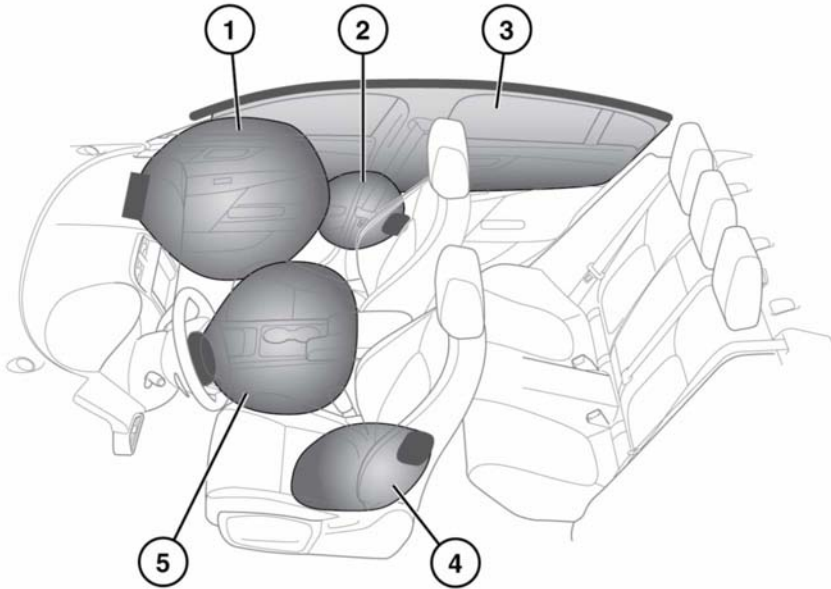
 Make sure that the rear seatback is securely and completely latched to the vehicle, in the normal upright position.

- Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint.

- Release the access cover for the relevant tether anchorage point.
- Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchorage point. Make sure that the tether strap hook is facing the correct way.
- Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat, or the child restraint, manufacturer's instructions.

Airbags

AIRBAGS



E165432

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Front seat side airbag.
3. Curtain airbags.
4. Front seat side airbag.
5. Driver's airbag.

Note: The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.

Always contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.
- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.





High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle. Always drive with caution and consideration for the vehicle's characteristics, road and weather conditions, and do not exceed any speed limits in force.





Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.


AIRBAG OPERATION


 For the airbags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to a Dealer/Authorised repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair.


 High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

 Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side airbags.

 Airbags inflate at high speeds. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as is practical.

 Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

 The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

 Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with SRS. If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised repairer.


Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.


The SRS is not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.


AIRBAG OBSTRUCTION


 Do not obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of your person or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. If the airbag inflates, objects or any part of your person could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

 Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing feet, knees, or any other part of the body, or any other objects in contact with, or in close proximity to, an airbag module. Do not place objects between the airbag module and the seat occupant.

Airbags

 Do not use non-approved seat covers or accessory seat covers that have not been designed for use with airbags. If in doubt, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

 Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain, and seat mounted side airbags.

 Do not attach or position items on, or close to, the roof lining, front seat backrests, or to an airbag cover, which could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Jaguar, or specifically designed for use with seat mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to make sure the airbags are not obstructed in any way.


Note: *Unauthorised modification of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty.*


Note: *Curtain airbags will not inflate as a result of frontal or rear impacts alone.*

DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG (Not Australia)

Note: *Disabling the front passenger airbag is market dependent.*

 The passenger airbag should be disabled only when a child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.

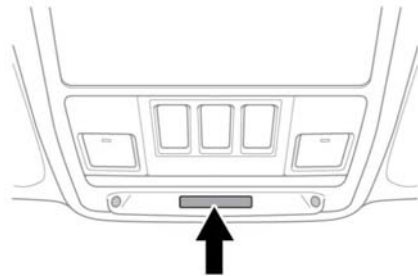
 Crash test data and statistics show that the safest place for a child to be restrained is in a child seat correctly fitted to the vehicle's rear seat.

 Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.

The front passenger's airbag can be switched on/off, using the interactive controls on the Instrument panel when the vehicle is stationary. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Select **Passenger Airbag** from the **Vehicle Set-up** menu, located in the **Main Menu**.

The displayed text and diagram will show the current **Airbag On** or **Airbag Off** status. Select **Change Setting** to toggle between these 2 options.



E165435


An airbag status Warning lamp display, mounted on the overhead control panel (as illustrated), will display the operational status


of the passenger airbag, as shown in the table below.


Setting	Passenger airbag status	Warning lamp display
Airbag Off	Disabled	PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
Airbag On	Activated	ON PASSENGER AIRBAG*

* Displays for 60 seconds, then extinguishes.


Note: The Message centre will also display a warning for 4 seconds every time the ignition is switched on.


 **As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be turned on. Failure to do so, will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**


 **When checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, make sure the ignition is switched on and the warning lamp bulb check period of 8 seconds has elapsed.**

 **Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the airbag warning lamp illuminates continuously with the ignition on.**

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

 **When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. This powder can cause breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so or get fresh air by opening a window. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.**

 **Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.**

 **After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.**

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags deploy depending on the severity of the frontal impact.


SIDE AND CURTAIN AIRBAGS


These are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The airbag warning lamp is mounted in the Instrument panel and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **53, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

 **The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system which could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.**

 **If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.**

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised repairer immediately:


- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the **START/STOP** button is initially switched on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the **START/STOP** button being switched on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check.


When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) components include:

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.

- Airbag modules.
- Front and second row outboard seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash sensors.
- Airbag wiring harnesses.
- Front seat buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Airbag status indicator.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

 **Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

 **Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

All of the following operations should only be carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified personnel:

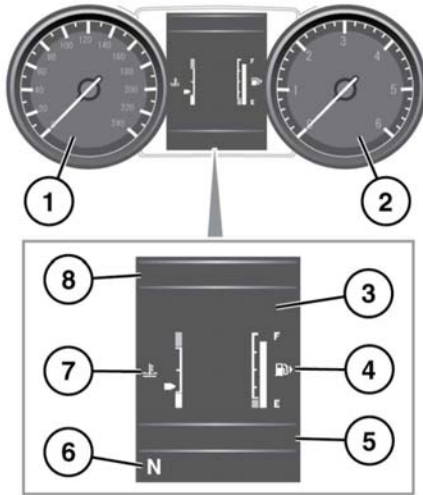
- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Installation of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS


Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

Instrument panel

INSTRUMENT PANEL



1. Speedometer: This can be adjusted to display **mph** or **km/h** via the **Instrument Display** and **Digital Speedometer** Instrument panel menus. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
2. Tachometer.
3. Message centre and menu display: The **Language** and **Temperature Units** can be changed via the **Instrument Display** Instrument panel menu.
4. Fuel gauge: See **53, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.


 Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. The resultant misfire can seriously damage the catalytic converter.

5. ECO data system: Status display for the accelerator pedal, engine revolution speed, and brake pedal application.

Note: This display is enabled when **ECO** driving mode is selected. See **135, ECO**.

The trip computer information is also displayed in this area. See **48, TRIP COMPUTER**.

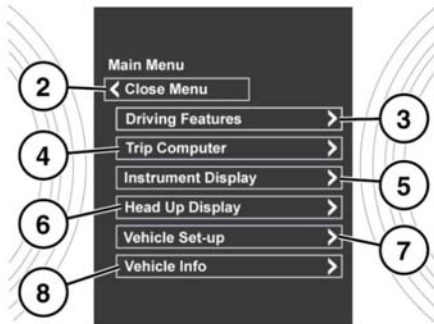
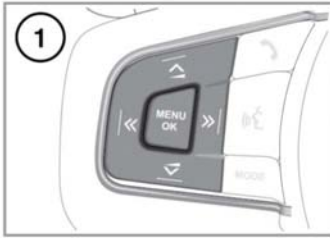
6. Gear selector status.
7. Temperature gauge: If the temperature gauge pointer moves into the red section at the top of the scale, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

 Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

Note: At high engine temperatures, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the Air Conditioning (A/C) may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with cooling.

8. Warning lamps and indicators display: The other warning lamps are displayed within the speedometer and tachometer.

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU



E162615

A number of vehicle features and display settings may be configured via the Instrument panel menus.

Note: *Some of the feature menus listed below may differ due to the vehicle's specification.*

To display and navigate through the Instrument panel menus, operate the steering wheel menu control buttons.

1. Steering wheel menu control buttons:

- Press the **MENU/OK** button to display the **Main Menu**.
- Press the relevant up or down arrow button to scroll through the currently displayed menu list. The current selection will be highlighted.
- Press the right arrow button to view a sub-list.

- Press the left arrow button to return to the previous menu.
- Press the **MENU/OK** button to select the highlighted item.

2. **Close Menu:** Select to close the **Main Menu** and return to the normal Message centre display.

3. Select to access the **Driving Features** menu list.

4. Select to access the **Trip Computer** menu list.

5. Select to access the **Instrument Display** menu list.

Note: *Some personalisation options may not be available in all markets.*

6. Select to access the **Head Up Display (HUD)** menu list.

7. Select to access the **Vehicle Set-up** menu list.



Before making any changes to the vehicle's set-up, you must make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant topics/sections of the handbook. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

8. Select to access the **Vehicle Info** menu list.

Note: *Can only be accessed when the engine is not running.*

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES



Do not ignore warning messages; take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle. If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

Instrument panel

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than 1 message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds, in order of priority.

Note: Messages are displayed in order of importance. High importance warning messages are given the highest priority.

Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning, and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel.

TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey, or series of journeys, until it is reset to zero.

There are 3 trip memories available, **A**, **B**, and **Auto**.

See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The **Trip Computer** menu options are listed below:

- Toggle between **Trip A**, **Trip B**, or **Trip Auto**.
- **Units:** Select to display and choose the required incremental figures for, distance, speed, and fuel consumption.
- **Trip Content:** Select to switch the content on/off for, **Trip distance**, **Average speed**, **Average consumption**, **Instantaneous consumption**, **Distance to empty**, and **Driving style**.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



A short press (1 second or less), or a series of short presses of the button will change the trip computer display. The options available are:

- Date and Odometer.
- Trip distance.
- Average speed.
- Average consumption.
- Instantaneous consumption.
- Distance to empty.
- Driving style.
- ECO data system status display.

Note: These options can be enabled/disabled via the **Instrument panel menu** (Select **Trip Computer** and then **Trip content**), except for the **ECO data system's status display** and the **Date and Odometer options**.

To reset the trip computer values to zero, press and hold the button for 2 seconds.

To reset the fuel consumption value, press and hold the button until the display clears.

The distance, average speed, and average fuel economy values for **trip A** and **trip B** can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the trip that you wish to reset, then press and hold the button until the message **Resetting trip** is displayed.

It is not possible to manually reset the **Auto** trip memory. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, or removed, to record a continuous journey. Press the button for longer than 1 second, when **Auto** trip memory values for distance, average speed, and average fuel economy are displayed, then **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** will appear on the screen. Press the button for longer than 1 second, and the previous trip information will be added to, or removed from, the current trip and the new total will be displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

This shows the predicted distance (kilometres or miles) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption and driving style remain constant.

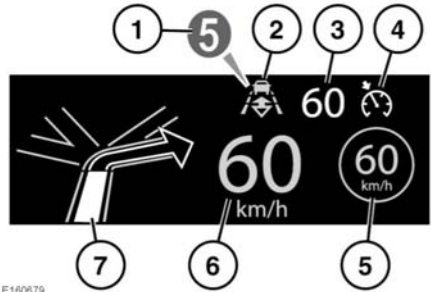
METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial, and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu of the Message centre. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: The temperature display can be changed between **°C (Celsius)** and **°F (Fahrenheit)**, independently of Metric or Imperial units.

HEAD UP DISPLAY

The Head Up Display (HUD) feature projects driver information onto the inside of the windscreen.



E160979

If enabled, the HUD information displayed is as follows:

1. Current gear selected.
2. Follow mode is active. See **129, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE**.
3. Cruise control set speed.
4. Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active.
5. Traffic sign recognition, identified speed limit. See **140, TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION**.
6. Current vehicle speed.
7. Turn-by-turn navigation instructions.

Note: Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is positioned above the Instrument panel next to the windscreen.

If cleaning is required, see **77, TOUCH SCREEN CARE** and follow the same cleaning instructions.

The **Head-Up Display (HUD)** (Instrument panel) menu options are listed below:

- **HUD:** Select to switch **on** or **off**.

Instrument panel

- **HUD options:** Select to choose which features to display, **Cruise control**, **Navigation**, **Traffic Signs**, and **Gear state**.
- **HUD brightness:** Select to adjust, via the steering wheel buttons. Select **OK** to confirm.
- **HUD position:** Select to adjust, via the steering wheel buttons. Select **OK** to confirm.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

AMBER and YELLOW warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

GREEN and BLUE lamps within the Instrument panel indicate system status.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g., high beam headlamps and direction indicators).*

Note: *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the Message centre.

GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the Message centre.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



Illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high. The Message centre will also display the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine, if the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

Warning lamps

BRAKE (YELLOW)



Illuminates with a message, to indicate worn brake components.

The message, **Brake Pads Worn**, may appear in the Message centre.

In the event that this message is displayed, drive carefully and seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

***Note:** If the lamp illuminates without a message, then a fault has been detected with the brake wear system. Drive carefully and seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.*

PARKING BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates when the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is correctly applied. If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



Illuminates as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

SEAT BELT (RED)



Illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied front seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp will extinguish when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

***Note:** Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the Seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See 29, USING THE SEAT BELTS.*

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



If the Lane departure warning system detects that the vehicle has crossed either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate direction indicator, then the relevant lane will illuminate red. This will also be accompanied by a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission. The vehicle can be driven but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



Illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



Flashes when DSC is active.

If there is a fault, it will remain illuminated and the Message centre will display **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**. The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when DSC is switched off. A chime will sound and a confirmation message will be displayed in the Message centre.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance urgently.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



Illuminates as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp illuminates when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates when there is a system fault. The headlamps will still operate, but without this feature operating correctly. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)



Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



Illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler cap.

AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



Illuminates when the Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) is active.

FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is in Follow mode.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

Warning lamps

PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates to confirm that the Progress control system is enabled.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)



The warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a message in the Message centre, to warn that 1 or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp will flash to indicate a system fault.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



Illuminates green to indicate that the Lane departure warning system has recognised a lane marking.

Illuminates grey to confirm the system is enabled, or if lane markings have not been recognised.

SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the side lamps are switched on.

AUTO HIGH BEAM (GREEN)



Illuminates when the Auto high beam feature has switched on the vehicle's high beams.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate warning lamp will flash when the direction indicators are operated.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)



Illuminates when the engine is shut down by the Intelligent stop/start system.

Note: Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, for example, the ignition warning lamp, will not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the Intelligent stop/start system.

GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)



The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gear shift indicator will not illuminate when Cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Note: This warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



Illuminates when Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active.

FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)



Illuminates when Forward alert is active.

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



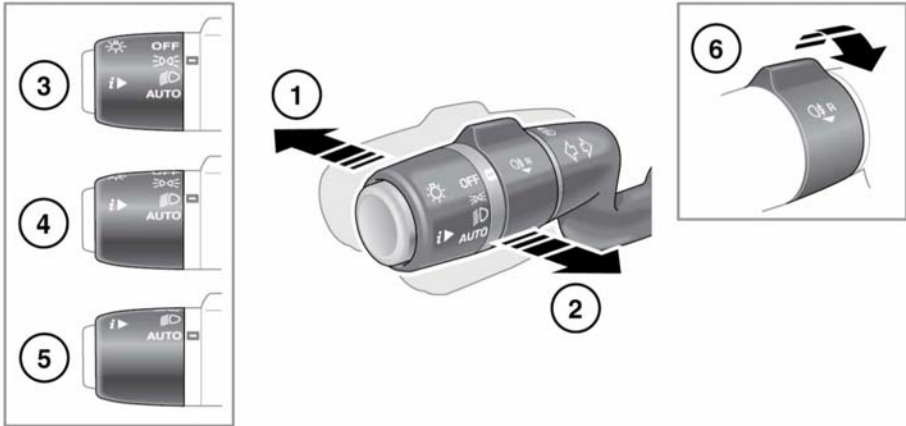
Illuminates as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp will flash in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note: *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

Exterior lights

LIGHTING CONTROL



E166164

1. With the headlamps on, push the control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **54, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

Note: Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.

2. Pull the control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam will remain on for as long as the switch is held.
3. Side lamps: Rotate the control to this position to switch the side lamps on. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **54, SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)**.
4. Headlamps: Rotate the control to this position to switch the headlamps on.
5. **AUTO:** With Auto lamps selected, when the ambient light fades and the ignition is on, the side lamps, tail lamps, dipped beam headlamps and licence plate lamps will switch on automatically. Headlamp courtesy delay, High beam assist and the Windscreen wipers detection may also be activated.

Note: Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the Auto lamps to activate.

6. Rear fog lamps: Will operate only while side lamps, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **53, REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)**.
To switch the rear fog lamps off: Turn the collar towards the steering wheel again and release.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173305

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

With the lighting control in the OFF position or in the **AUTO** position, while the lighting conditions do not require the headlamps to be on, then the Daytime running lamps will switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (P) (automatic transmission).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied - market dependent.



Unless required or prohibited by law, the Daytime running lamps feature can be disabled or enabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



The Daytime running lamp, within the Xenon headlamp unit, is a Light Emitting Diode (LED) lamp and should only be replaced or maintained by qualified personnel.

Note: The Halogen headlamp's high beam bulb has 2 filaments, one is for the high beam and the other is for the Daytime running lamp. See **188, HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT - HALOGEN HIGH BEAM.**

HEADLAMP COURTESY DELAY

This feature operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO (5)** position and the ignition is switched off. The headlamps will remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

Note: The time delay may be changed via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.**

The courtesy delay can be switched off at any time, by pressing the headlamp button on the Smart key.

AUTO HIGH BEAM

This feature of the Xenon lighting automatically selects and deselects the high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

Note: It is not recommended that Auto high beam is used while driving off road.

For Auto high beam to become operational, the lighting control must be in the **AUTO (5)** position, with dipped beam headlamps selected.

The Instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when Auto high beam is selected. See **54, AUTO HIGH BEAM (GREEN).**

Auto high beam will only activate when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system will deactivate when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position as normal. To return to Auto high beam, move the lighting control back to the central position.

To manually override to dipped beam from high beam, pull the lighting control to the flash position (**2**) and Auto high beam will be cancelled. To return to Auto high beam, push the lighting control to the high beam position (**1**) and then return it to the central position.

To switch Auto high beam off, turn the lighting control from **Auto** to headlamps.

This feature can be disabled/enabled via the **Driving Features** and **Auto High Beam** Instrument panel menus. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.** Use the **Vehicle Info** and **AHB Sensitivity** menus to select either the **Normal Mode** or the **Test Mode.**

The following may affect the operation of Auto high beam:

- Highly reflective road signs.

Exterior lights

- Dimly lit road users, for example, cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, for example, rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.

Note: The system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to use the headlamps correctly at all times.

Note: Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the back of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If Auto lamps is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lamps, tail lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lamps will automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

Misting of lamp lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. This will not affect the performance of the lamps and will clear during normal operation.

HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

The headlamp beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

HEADLAMP LEVELLING



E164607

Use the rotary control to set the Halogen headlamps position to the correct level for the current vehicle load. This is located on the driver's side lower fascia.

Note: Not available for all markets.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver and front seat passenger	1
Driver and passengers in all seats	2
Maximum gross vehicle weight	3
Maximum rear axle load	3

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

With the headlamps on, the AFS will adjust the beams when cornering, to provide an improved illumination in the direction of travel.

The AFS is deactivated when:

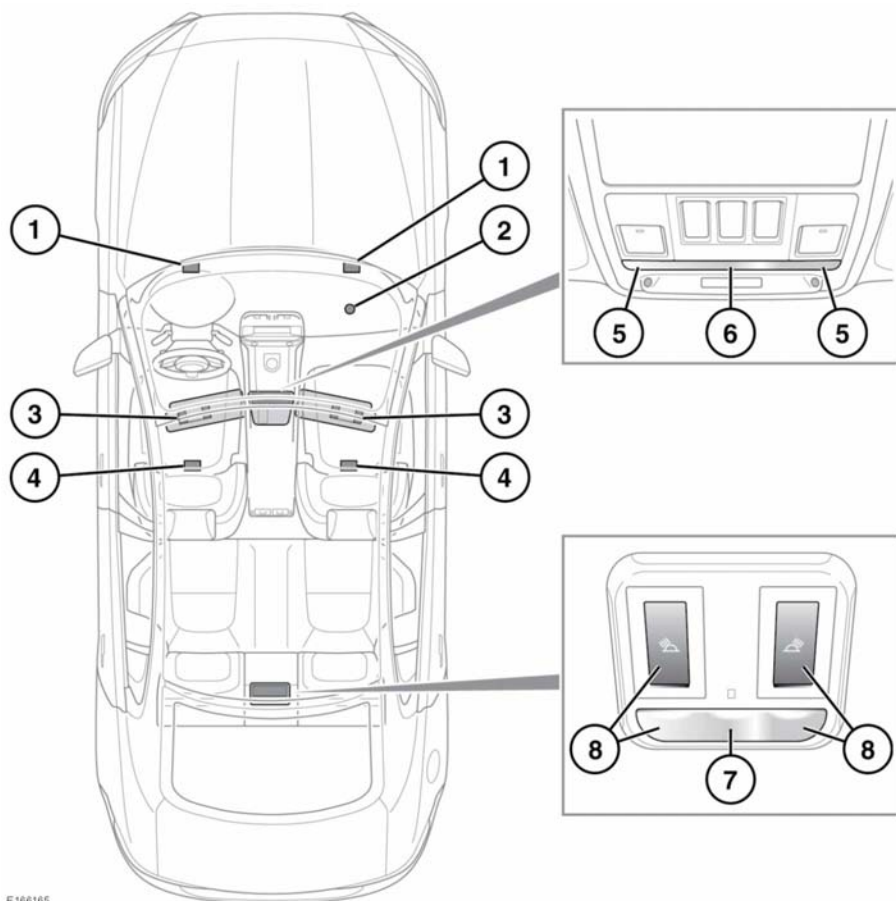
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- The vehicle is stationary.

If a system fault is detected, the headlamps will attempt to move to the central position and then remain stationary. The AFS warning indicator will illuminate to indicate that a fault is present. See **53, ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)**.

If the warning lamp illuminates, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Interior lights

INTERIOR LIGHTS



E166165

1. Front seat footwell lamps.
2. Glovebox lamp: Open to illuminate.
3. Vanity mirror lamps: Lift the sun visor flap to illuminate.
4. Rear seat footwell lamps.
5. Front reading lamps: Touch the lens briefly to switch on/off.
6. Front interior courtesy lamp: Touch the lens briefly to switch on/off.
7. Rear interior courtesy lamp.
8. Rear reading lamps: Press the appropriate button to activate a reading lamp manually. Press again to switch off.

All the interior lamps (except for the glovebox and the vanity mirror lamps) illuminate automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, or a door is opened. They will extinguish approximately 20 seconds after all of the doors are closed, or when the vehicle is locked.

To switch the automatic illumination of the interior lamps off/on, continue to touch the front interior lamp lens (6) until the lamp flashes.

INTERIOR LIGHTS OFF or **INTERIOR LIGHTS AUTO** will be displayed in the Message centre accordingly.

Note: *The puddle lamps (mounted at the base of each door) and the Luggage compartment lamps are automatically operated when a door or the luggage compartment is opened. The on/off status of the interior lamps' automatic illumination, will not affect the operation of these lamps.*

INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the rotary control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lamps must be switched on while changes are being made. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

The ambient lighting can be adjusted for colour and intensity via the Touch screen **Extra features** menu. See **76, TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**. The exterior lamps must be switched on while changes are being made.

STEALTH MODE

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid night time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the Touch screen **Extra features** menu. See **76, TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

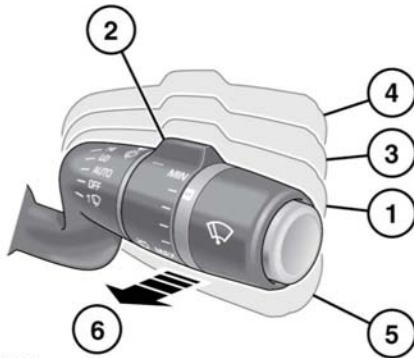
Once enabled, Stealth mode is activated by switching the Touch screen off. If night time conditions exist when the Touch screen is switched off, the interior switch illumination and the Instrument panel illumination will automatically reduce to their minimum levels. Stealth mode will be deactivated if night time conditions no longer exist, or if the Touch screen is switched back on.

Note: *The interior illumination control will not operate while Stealth mode is active. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.*

Wipers and washers

WIPER OPERATION

- ❗ Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen.
- ❗ To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See **198, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION.**
- ❗ Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the windscreen scuttle, before operating the wipers.



Vehicles with a rain sensor

1. Automatic Rain sensing mode: The front wipers will respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).
- ❗ Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the automatic Rain sensing system operates during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic Rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position the more responsive the system will become. When automatic Rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system will perform a single wipe.
3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for 2 further wipes after the wiper/washer control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe will clear any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the wiper/washer control position.

Note: The front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open.

Vehicles without a rain sensor

1. Intermittent wipe: The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).
- ❗ Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.
2. Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (1) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes will occur.
- Note:** Wipe frequency will increase with vehicle speed.
3. Low speed continuous wipe.
 4. High speed continuous wipe.

5. Single wipe of the windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for 2 further wipes after the wiper/washer control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe will clear any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the wiper/washer control position.

Note: *The front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open.*

Note: *If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended screen cleaning fluid. See 248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS.*

Note: *The windscreen will no longer be wiped effectively and the automatic Rain sensing function will degrade if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position will move the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See 198, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION.*

Note: *If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out will temporarily halt the wiper's operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.*

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting will be restored.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted will also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

RAIN SENSOR

The wiper's rain sensor (if fitted) is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen, and automatically activate the windscreen wipers accordingly.

Note: *Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.*

Note: *The Wiper Rain Sensor can be enabled/disabled via the Vehicle Set-up menu. See 47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.*

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper/washer control to the **AUTO** position. The behaviour of the system may be adjusted to the driver's preference by rotating the collar (2).

Note: *If the wiper/washer control is turned to the AUTO position, the wipers will not operate if either of the front doors are open.*

Note: *In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wiper/washer controls are returned to the OFF position.*

DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe function is configured, the wipers will operate for a few seconds after a wash/wipe cycle has finished, to clear any remaining drips from the windscreen.

Wipers and washers



This function can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

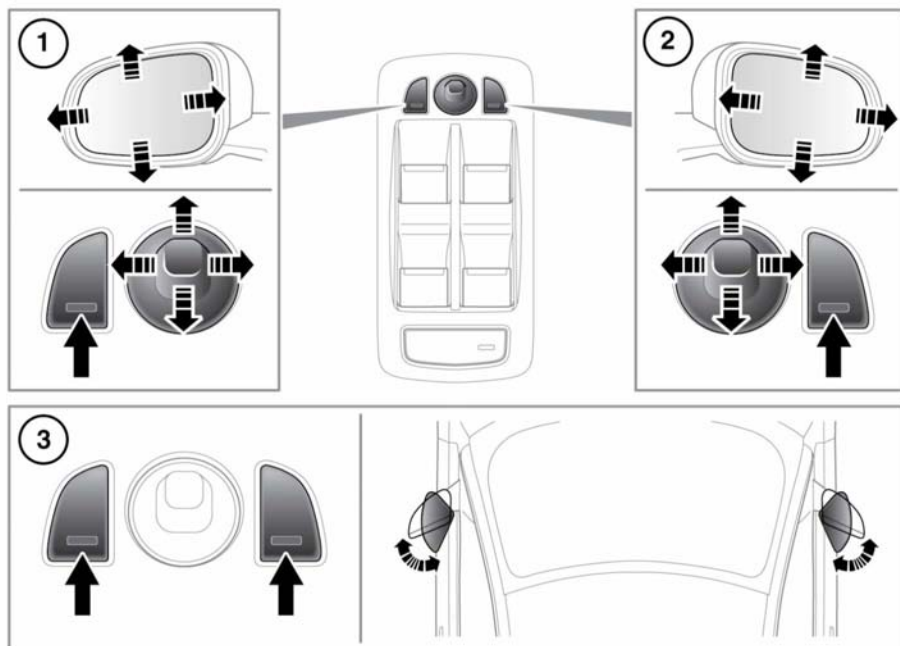
The optional headlamp power wash operates automatically with the windscreen wash, and will only operate if the headlamps are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.

Headlamp wash operates every fourth operation of the screen washers, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

Switching the headlamps or the ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle. See **56, LIGHTING CONTROL**, or see **100, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

***Note:** The headlamps are washed alternately to prevent the washer fluid from reducing the light output from both headlamps simultaneously.*

EXTERIOR MIRRORS



E 166364

1. Left mirror adjustment.
2. Right mirror adjustment.
3. Power-fold/unfold: Press both buttons simultaneously. This feature is inhibited at speeds over 110 km/h (70 mph).

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is on and for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Press the appropriate button to select the mirror to be adjusted; the button LED indicator lamp will illuminate to confirm which side is active. Use the joystick control to adjust the mirror's glass.

Note: Depending on the type of lens used, distances may be difficult to judge accurately when only using the mirrors.



The mirrors can be configured to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when unlocked. This feature can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If the mirrors are accidentally knocked out of position (e.g., so only one is folded), press both buttons simultaneously to re-synchronise.

Note: If the mirrors were folded using the switches, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Note: Up to 3 different exterior mirror positions can be stored and recalled using the Driving position memory feature. See 20, **DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING



The mirrors can be configured so that when Reverse (**R**) gear is selected, the passenger's door mirror is automatically adjusted to provide an improved viewing angle for reversing.

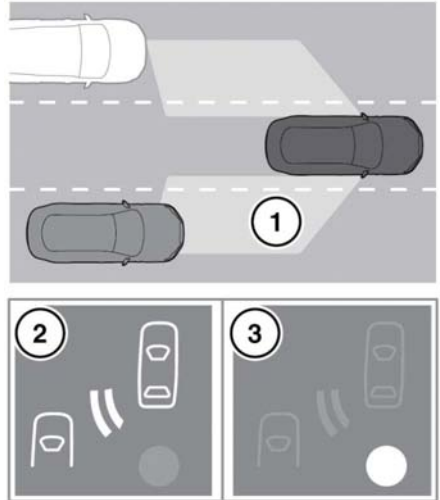
The exact dipped position can be adjusted using the joystick control, when the mirror is dipped. The next time **R** is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, or if the vehicle's speed exceeds 12 km/h (7.5 mph) while reversing, the mirror will return to its previous position.

Reverse-dip Mirror can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See 47, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

-  The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors. The system may not function under all speeds, weather and road conditions.
-  The BSM may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind or vehicles that are being overtaken rapidly.
-  The BSM may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc. Drive safely at all times and use the exterior and rear view mirrors to avoid accidents.
-  The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle/object within the blind spot.
-  Make sure the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.
-  Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



E171283

The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, that is not easily visible to the driver. The system uses a radar on each side of the vehicle to identify any overtaking vehicle/object within the blind spot area (1) of the vehicle, while disregarding other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.

If an object is identified by the BSM system as being an overtaking vehicle/object, an amber warning icon (2) illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror, to alert the driver that there is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 6 m (20 ft) behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 m (8.2 ft) from the side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane). The BSM is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane roads.

Blind spot monitoring

Note: This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

Note: The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.

Note: If rapidly overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will flash.

The BSM automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check, during which the warning icons in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

The indicator dot (3) remains illuminated until the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

The BSM is automatically disabled and an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirrors when:

- Reverse (R) gear is selected.
- Park (P) is selected for vehicles with automatic transmission.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 km/h (4 mph).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

Note: Automatic disabling of the BSM does not apply to vehicles with Reverse Traffic Detection. See 118, **REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION**.

The BSM can be enabled or disabled through the Instrument panel menu. See 47, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: The BSM is disabled when a trailer is attached.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING



Closing vehicle sensing is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.



Closing vehicle sensing may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from directly behind the vehicle. Always use the exterior and interior rear-view mirrors.



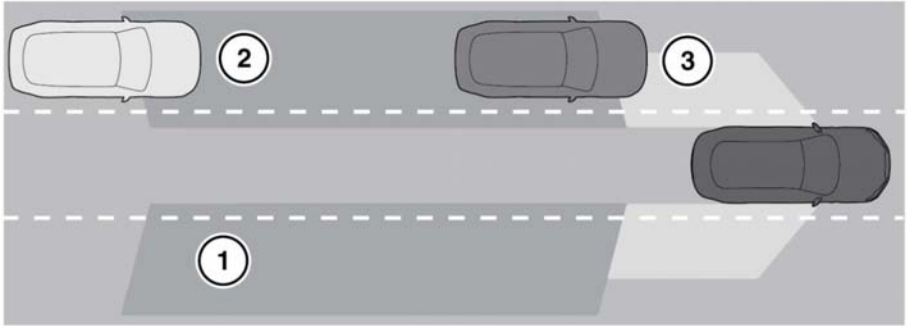
The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect an approaching vehicle.



Make sure that the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.



Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



E171284

In addition to the functionality provided by the Blind Spot Monitor (BSM), Closing vehicle sensing monitors a larger area behind the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is designed to perform best on multi-lane motorways with free-flowing traffic and is operational above 13 km/h (8 mph) in a forward gear.

1. Closing vehicle sensing monitors an area behind the vehicle, up to a distance of 70 m (230 ft) and approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) from each side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane).
2. If a vehicle is detected approaching rapidly, an amber warning icon will flash in the relevant exterior mirror to indicate that there is a potential danger.
3. When the detected vehicle reaches the area monitored by the BSM, the amber warning icon will illuminate continuously.

Note: If rapidly overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will flash.

Note: Closing vehicle sensing covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.

Note: Closing vehicle sensing is disabled when the vehicle is negotiating a tight radius curve.

Note: When the BSM is disabled, Closing vehicle sensing is also disabled. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: Closing vehicle sensing is disabled when a trailer is attached.

Note: This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

BSM SENSORS

The BSM system will automatically disable if either of the sensors become completely obscured; an amber indicator dot (3) is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED** appears in the Message centre.

Note: Blockage testing is initiated only when the vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) and will take at least 2 minutes of accumulated driving above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.

If the sensors become blocked, check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost, and dirt.

If a fault with one of the radar sensors is detected, an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre.

Blind spot monitoring

Note: *Even if the detected fault affects the radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault in the system occurs, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

RADIO FREQUENCY TRANSCEIVER

In some countries, the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

The RF transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to 3 different hand held transmitters. These can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF operated remote devices.



Do not use the RF transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.



When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or an entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. This will prevent potential harm or damage, as the gate or garage door will activate during programming.



This device may suffer from interference, if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver.

For further information, see **72, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

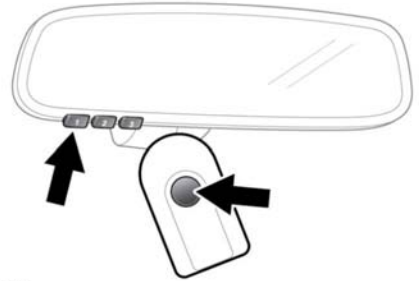
BEFORE PROGRAMMING



When programming a remote device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter, unplug the device during the programming process, to prevent possible motor failure.

For the best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, then make sure that the antenna is extended.

PROGRAMMING



E169455

To program the RF transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Position the hand-held transmitter 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 inches) from the rear-view mirror.
3. Simultaneously press and hold the memory button on the hand-held transmitter, and the desired memory button on the RF transceiver. An indicator LED, located on the left side of the mirror, will start flashing slowly.
4. When the LED starts flashing quickly, release both buttons.

To operate the remote device, press and hold the programmed memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds. If the LED illuminates continuously, the RF transceiver has been programmed successfully, and the remote device will operate.

Note: You may need to press the button on the RF transceiver up to 3 times.

Garage door opener

If the remote device does not operate, and the LED flashes quickly, further programming will be required.

These extra programming steps may require assistance from another person.

1. Locate the **smart/learn program** button on the remote device you wish to program.

Note: The name and location of this button may vary, depending on the manufacturer of the remote device.

2. Press and release the **smart/learn program** button and, within 30 seconds, press and hold the desired memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds.

Note: You may need to press and hold the memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds, a further 2 times.

Note: Some entry gate systems require you to cycle (press and re-press) the hand-held transmitter every 2 seconds during programming. If this is the case, continue to press and hold the memory button on the RF transceiver until the LED flashes quickly.

The RF transceiver should now be programmed. Repeat the programming steps, if you wish to add further remote devices to the RF transceiver.

To operate a programmed remote device, press and hold the relevant memory button on the transceiver. Release the button when the device starts operating.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the RF transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Simultaneously press and hold memory buttons **1** and **3** on the RF transceiver.

After approximately 10 seconds, the RF transceiver LED will start to flash. At this point, release both memory buttons on the RF transceiver. All programming will have now been erased from the RF transceiver.

Note: Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed RF transceiver memory button:

1. Press and hold the desired RF transceiver memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED will start to flash slowly.
2. Follow the instructions described in step (2) onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE



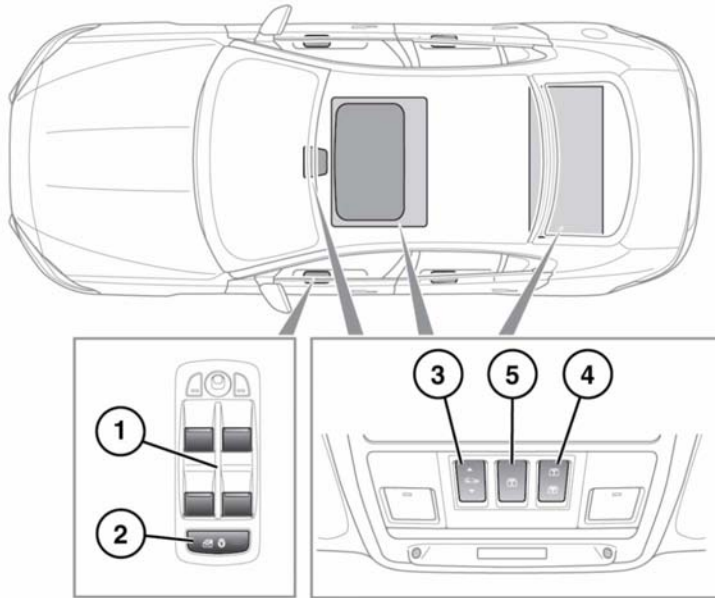
It is recommended that when you sell the vehicle, you erase all programming from the RF transceiver.

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact your Dealer/Authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink website www.homelink.com.

Note: Retain the original remote feature handset, for future programming requirements.

Note: The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS



E166373

1. Window switches:

Note: Each switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press/pull and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press/pull fully and release for fully (one-touch) automatic operation. Fully automatic operation can be halted at any time, by operating the switch again.

- Press the front of the switch to partially/fully open.
- Pull the front of the switch to partially/fully close.

Note: The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.



Make sure that the Smart key is removed when leaving passengers in the vehicle. This will prevent unsupervised operation of the windows and sunroof, which may result in injury.



Any ice must be removed from the windows before operating.

2. Rear window isolator.



If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the rear windows.

3. Sunroof:

Note: The front and rear of the switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for fully (one-touch) automatic operation. Fully automatic operation can be halted at any time, by pressing the switch again.

- With the sunroof closed, press the rear of the switch to partially/fully raise the sunroof to the tilt position. Press the rear of the switch again to partially/fully open the sunroof.

Note: If the sunblind is closed, the sunroof switch will also open the sunblind while operating the sunroof.

- With the sunroof open, press the front of the switch to partially/fully close the sunroof to the tilt position. Press the front of the switch again to partially/fully lower the sunroof.



To prevent accidental damage, make sure any roof rack load will not interfere with the opening of the sunroof.

4. Sunroof blind:

Note: The front and rear of the switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for fully (one-touch) automatic operation. Fully automatic operation can be halted at any time, by pressing the switch again.

- Press the rear of the switch to partially/fully open.
- Press the front of the switch to partially/fully close.

The sunroof blind can be opened whenever required, but it can only be closed when the sunroof is closed. If the sunroof is partially closed, then the sunblind will only partially close to the same position.

If the sunblind encounters a resistance when closing, it will stop and then (dependent on its current position) it will either partially or fully open, to allow removal of the obstruction and to prevent personal injury or damage to the mechanism. Press and hold the front of the switch, within 10 seconds of the partial or full opening, to override.

5. Rear screen sun blind.

- Press the switch to deploy.
- Press the switch again to stow.

Note: If a resonance or a booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25mm (1 inch) will eliminate the condition.

WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION




Before closing a window, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture and remove any obstructions. The override procedure is, as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time holding the switch in the close position. The window will raise while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

Note: If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window's operation may need to be reset. See **199, WINDOW RESET**.

SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM

 **Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.**

If the sunroof encounters a resistance when closing, it will stop and then (dependent on its current position) it will either partially or fully open, to allow removal of the obstruction and to prevent serious personal injury or damage to the mechanism. Press and hold the front of the switch, within 10 seconds of the partial or full opening, to override the anti-trap mechanism.

If the sunroof fails to operate correctly, it may need to be reset. See **198, SUNROOF RESET**.

SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS



E167876

Some vehicles may have a windscreen with solar attenuating glass, that filters sunlight by passing it through a special laminated layer.

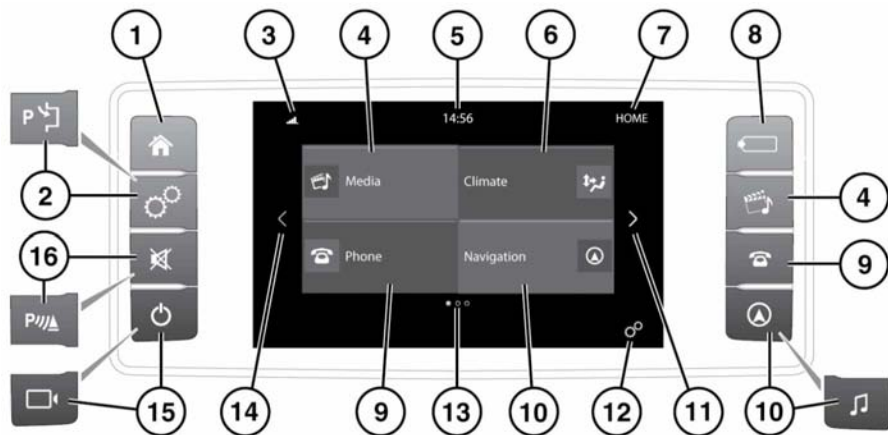
Electronic actuating cards, such as toll road payment cards or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be fixed at the dedicated locations on the inside of the windscreen. If these cards are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windscreen, then the electronic scanners may not recognize them.

The fixing location is at the top of the windscreen, close to the interior rear-view mirror.

Note: It is recommended that the electronic actuating card should be in the size appropriate location, on the driver's side of the windscreen.

Note: Transponders mounted on the front number plate plinth can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.

TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS



⚠ Do not adjust the Touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

ⓘ Always run the engine during prolonged use of the Touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery; preventing the engine from starting.

ⓘ Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the Touch screen.

Note: The Touch screen display and the number of screen pages will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

Note: The Touch screen will remain active until the ignition is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

1. Press to select the **HOME** menu screen.
2. Press to select the **General settings** menu screen, see **77, GENERAL SETTINGS**. If Park assist is fitted, then see **120, PARK ASSIST**.

3. Status icons: Showing the connected phone's battery level and network signal strength. The Traffic Announcement (**TA**) icon will also be displayed, if TA is currently switched on. See **144, AUDIO SETTINGS**.


4. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **Media** system. If the Media system is already switched on, then touch to select the current media source menu.

Note: When the system is active, current information for the media being played will be displayed.

5. Clock: The clock can be adjusted via the **System** option, in the **General settings** menu.
6. Touch to select the **Climate** system. See **79, CLIMATE CONTROL**.
7. The title of the current screen display.
8. Continually press to scroll through the media source options.
9. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **Telephone** system. See **157, TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

10. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **Navigation** system. The current destination route, or the **NAV MENU** screen will be displayed. See **164, THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**. For vehicles without navigation, press to display the Audio menu screen.
11. Touch the arrow or swipe the screen, to select the next screen to the right. From the **HOME** menu screen, this will be the **Extra features** available on the vehicle. See **78, EXTRA FEATURES**.
12. Touch to select the **General settings** menu screen.
13. Indicator for the number of available screens. The solid dot indicates the position of the currently displayed screen.
14. Touch the arrow or swipe the screen, to select the next screen to the left.
15. Press to switch the Touch screen on/off. If Surround cameras are fitted, the screen can be switched off in **Extra features**. See **124, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
16. Press to mute the sound. If Parking aids are fitted, see **115, USING THE PARKING AID**.


TOUCH SCREEN USE

 Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the Touch screen.

Definitions for the various button taps and Touch screen gestures used in this handbook:

- **Touch:** Briefly touch the screen's surface with your fingertip.
- **Touch and hold:** Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- **Swipe:** Move your fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- **Drag:** Touch an object and move it with your fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE

 Do not use abrasive cleaners on the Touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

GENERAL SETTINGS

The **General settings** menu screen is divided into categories. Touch to display the list of settings for the required system:

- **System.**
- **Display.**
- **Media.**
- **Bluetooth.**
- **Phone.**
- **Navigation.**
- **WiFi.**
- **Climate.**

Note: The list will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

The **System** settings screen is divided into categories and is selected via the **General settings** menu:

- **Language:** Select the language required.
- **Time & Date:** Select to change the time and date.
- **Volume settings.**
- **Unit of measurement:** Miles or Kilometres.
- **Beep:** Switch **ON/OFF**.
- **Animations:** Switch **ON/OFF**.
- **Automatic text scrolling:** Switch **ON/OFF**.
- **Reduced volume during:** Switch **ON/OFF**. When enabled, this will automatically reduce the vehicle's audio volume during a phone call.

Touch screen

- **Screensaver:** Switch **ON/OFF**.
- **Dynamic Home Menu:** Switch **ON/OFF**.
- **Delete all personal data.**

Note: The list will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

EXTRA FEATURES

Touch the required extra feature to display that feature's information or settings screen:

- **Timed climate:** See **82, TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL**.
- **Cameras:** See **124, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
- **ECO Data:** The ECO Data system is designed to help the driver maximise fuel economy by providing on-screen vehicle data. Touch to select the **ECO Data** home screen. See **135, ECO**.
- **Valet mode:** See **78, SELECTING VALET MODE**.
- **Ambient lighting:** When selected, the ambient lighting in the vehicle can be changed.
- **WiFi hotspot:** See **162, INCONTROL WI-FI**.
- **Screen off:** Touch to turn the screen off.

Note: The number of extra features will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the luggage compartment. Valet mode also prevents operation of the Touch screen, to prevent access to telephone numbers or navigation addresses.

Each time Valet mode is used, a Personal Identification Number (PIN) must be entered.

To select Valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet mode** in **Extra features**.
2. Enter a memorable 4-digit PIN. You will be prompted to confirm the PIN. If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**. If the PIN is cancelled, or incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again.
3. **Valet mode activated** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

The luggage compartment is now securely locked in Valet mode and the **Valet mode On** screen is displayed.

DESELECTING VALET MODE

To deselect Valet mode:

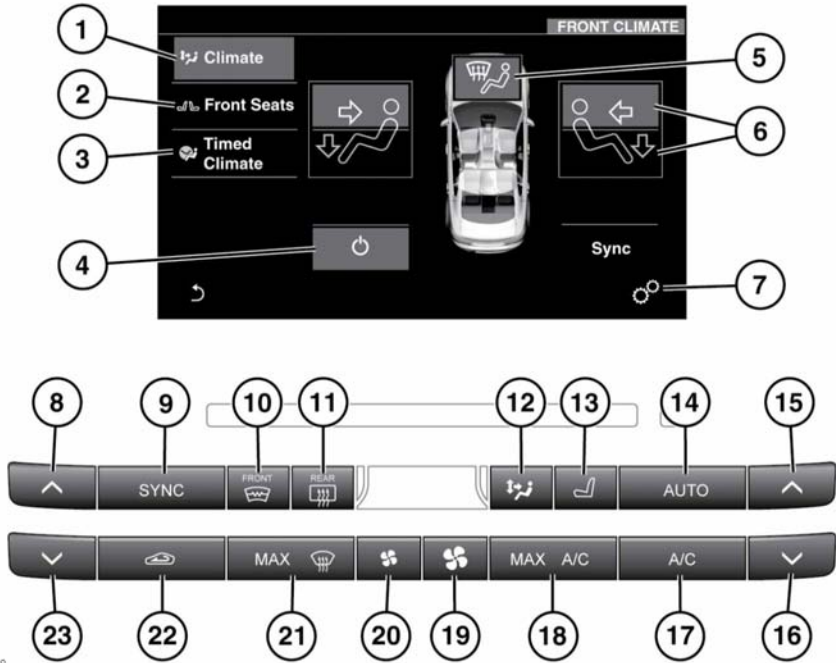
1. When you re-enter the vehicle, select **Valet mode** in **Extra features**.
2. Enter your memorable 4-digit PIN and touch the **OK** soft key.

Valet mode deactivated is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

- The luggage compartment will return to the previously set security requirement.
- The Touch screen will be enabled.


Note: If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CLIMATE CONTROL



E167920

1. **Climate:** To access the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen, touch **Climate** on the **HOME** menu screen. See **76, TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.
 2. **Front Seats:** Touch to select the **Climate seats** settings screen.
 3. **Timed Climate:** Touch to select the **TIMED CLIMATE** settings menu. See **82, TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL**.
 4. Touch to switch the Climate control system off.
 5. Windscreen air distribution: Touch to switch on/off.
 6. Air distribution: Touch the upper (face distribution) or lower (body/feet distribution) area to select.
 7. Touch to select the **General settings** menu, then to access the **Climate** settings menu.
 8. Press to increase the temperature for the front left side of the vehicle.
 9. Press to synchronise the driver and front passenger climate zone settings.
 10. Heated front screen: Press to switch on/off.
 11. Heated rear screen: Press to switch on/off.
- Note:** The heated front and rear screens, will operate only when the engine is running.

 Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.

12. Air distribution: Press to select the desired air distribution via the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen.

13. Press to select the **Front Seats** Heated/Climate seat menu.

14. AUTO mode: Press to switch the fully automatic mode on/off. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via the Climate settings.

15. Press repeatedly to increase the temperature for the front right side of the vehicle.

16. Press repeatedly to decrease the temperature for the front right side of the vehicle.

17. A/C: Press to switch the Air conditioning (A/C) system on/off.

18. MAX A/C: Press to switch the maximum A/C mode on/off.

19. Press to increase the blower speed.

20. Press to decrease the blower speed.

21. Press to switch the maximum defrost for the windscreen on/off.

22. Recirculation: Press for timed recirculation (recirculation will operate for 4 minutes) or press and hold for continuous recirculation. Press again to switch off.

***Note:** Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist*

23. Press to decrease the temperature for the front left side of the vehicle.

***Note:** Some of the hard keys will have an LED indicator lamp that will illuminate to confirm selection.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173294

CLIMATE SETTINGS

Touch the **General settings** menu soft key on the **FRONT CLIMATE** menu screen and then select **Climate**. See **79, CLIMATE CONTROL**.

- **Auto sensitivity:** The Air quality sensor, for Automatic recirculation, can be set to **Low**, **Medium** or **High**. Select **Off** to disable Automatic recirculation.
- **Auto power:** The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Low**, **Medium** or **High**.
- **Auto heated screens:** The automatic operation of the front and/or the rear heated screens can be enabled/disabled.

***Note:** Selection of the **ECO** driving mode may automatically alter some status and settings for these menus (dependent on previous selections). See **135, ECO**.*

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

If an Air quality sensor is fitted, the Climate control system will monitor exterior air pollution and select recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. This feature only operates when selected from the **Settings** menu. Recirculation sensitivity can also be changed in the **Settings** menu. See **81, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

Pressing the recirculation button will not deactivate automatic recirculation.

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the Air quality sensor can be adjusted using the Touch screen:

1. Select **Settings** from the **Climate** menu.
2. Touch the buttons on the screen to increase/decrease sensitivity.
To switch off air quality sensing, touch **Off**.



The auto recirculation icon appears on the Touch screen when the Air quality sensor is switched on.

HEATED SEATS

Note: *Seat heaters consume a large amount of battery power. They will only operate when the engine is running.*

Note: *If fitted, the rear Heated seats (non-climate) can only be operated by pressing the buttons located at the rear of the centre console.*

Press the relevant rear Heated seat button, to switch the required seat heater on at the maximum setting. The 3 LED indicators on the button will illuminate.

Press a second time to set the Heated seat at the medium setting; 2 LED indicators will illuminate.

Press a third time to set the Heated seat at the lowest setting; 1 LED indicator will illuminate.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: *The Heated/Climate seats will only operate when the engine is running.*

Touch the **Front seats** soft key from the **Climate** menu, or press the Heated/Climate seat button.

Note: *The **Front seats** menu will be displayed.*

Note: *A seat icon, at the top of the Touch screen, will change colour to indicate the status of the Climate seats; red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.*

Heated ventilation

- Touch the up arrow icon to switch heated ventilation on at the maximum setting (3 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow icon once or twice to reduce the ventilation setting (2 and 1 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow a third time to switch off heated seat ventilation.

Cooled ventilation

- Touch the down arrow icon to switch cooled ventilation on at the maximum setting (3 blue bars).
- Touch the up arrow icon once or twice to reduce the ventilation setting (2 and 1 blue bars).
- Touch the up arrow a third time to switch off cooled seat ventilation.

Seat zone selection


If fitted with Climate seats, constant selection of the **Seat zone** soft key will scroll through the 3 choices of seat zone; **full seat**, **cushion**, or **back rest** only.


AUXILIARY HEATER

The vehicle may be fitted with an Auxiliary heater, which is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The Auxiliary heater operates at low ambient temperatures and helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant for improved heater performance. It can also be controlled by the Timed climate control system or from the Timed climate remote control (if fitted).

Heating and ventilation

When the Auxiliary heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. This is normal and is not a cause for concern.

 **Do not operate the Auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire/explosion.**

 **Do not operate the Auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.**

TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL

The Timed climate control system provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver and passengers entering. Dependent on the external temperature, the system draws in fresh air to cool the cabin or operates the auxiliary heater to warm it.

The auxiliary heater is also operated to warm the engine and aid starting in very cold conditions.

Note: *If the Auxiliary heater is used to warm the engine, the cabin will not be warmed.*

The Timed climate control system is controlled by the Touch screen and can be activated/deactivated by the Timed climate remote control.

The system may not operate or will automatically switch off in the following scenarios:

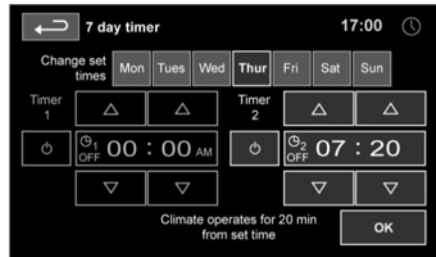
- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at or above, its required temperature.

SETTING TIMED CLIMATE

The Touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED in the Climate control **AUTO** or **A/C** button will flash. **AUTO** indicates the engine or cabin are being heated. **A/C** indicates the cabin is being ventilated. The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

Note: *The system will cease operation when the engine is started.*



E140084

To set a Timed climate programme:

1. Press the **HOME MENU** button.
2. Touch the **Timed Climate** soft key. This soft key may be set on a personal shortcut or accessed via the **Extra Features** soft key. Select **7 day timer** or **single event**, then select the timer soft key. If the 7 day timer is selected, then select the day for which you want to set a program. Alternatively, select **All Week** to select the same start time for every day.
3. Touch the **Timer 1** or **Timer 2** icon. The timers can be toggled between on and off using the power soft key.

4. Touch the up or down arrows to set the start time. Hours and minutes are adjusted separately.
5. Touch **OK**. The screen will display the activation time. If required, set the time for the other timer using the same process.
6. Once set, the timer events can be switched on or off, as required, in the **Timed climate** screen by selecting the **7 day timer** or the **single event** soft key.

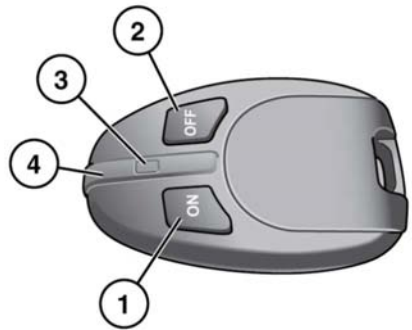
Note: Set times should be programmed 20 minutes before the planned journey.

Note: The time format, 12/24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the **System settings** menu. See 47, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: Timed climate will only operate once between engine starts. For example, a remote Timed climate request will not be performed if a programmed Timed climate event has already occurred.

A current heating cycle will be cancelled if the engine is started. Any programmed heating cycle may be cancelled by touching the relevant power soft key on the timer set up menu or the **Power** soft key on the **Timed Climate** information home menu.

USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



E164037

1. **ON** button.
2. **OFF** button.
3. Light Emitting Diode (LED) operation indicator.
4. Antenna.

Note: Avoid touching the antenna when operating the **ON** or **OFF** button.

The remote control has an approximate range of 100 metres. There is no need to point the remote control at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately 2 seconds. The LED will illuminate green to confirm that a remote climate program has been initiated. The LED flashes once every 2 seconds to indicate that the heater is active.

The remote Timed climate programme will continue for 20-30 minutes, after which it will switch off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. It also switches off automatically if the engine is started.

The LED indicator signals various states and conditions for the remote Timed climate as follows:

Heating and ventilation

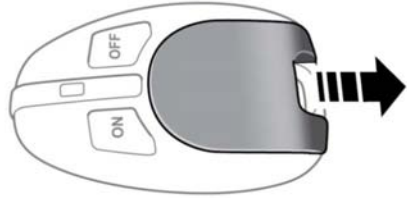
- Illuminates green when the **ON** button is pressed, then quickly flashes green to indicate that heater operation has been requested.
- Illuminates green followed by red, when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the heater has been requested to shut down.
- Illuminates green, then quickly flashes red, when either the **ON** or **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that there is no communication with the receiver. This normally occurs if the vehicle is too far away.
- Illuminates green, then slowly flashes red, when either the **ON** or **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that there is an error.
- Flashes red when either the **ON** or **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate the timer climate remote battery needs replacing.

Note: *The Timed climate remote will only operate once per engine start to maintain battery condition.*

ADDITIONAL REMOTES

Extra remote controls can be programmed to operate the heater. A maximum of 4 remote controls can be programmed to the vehicle. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to purchase extra remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

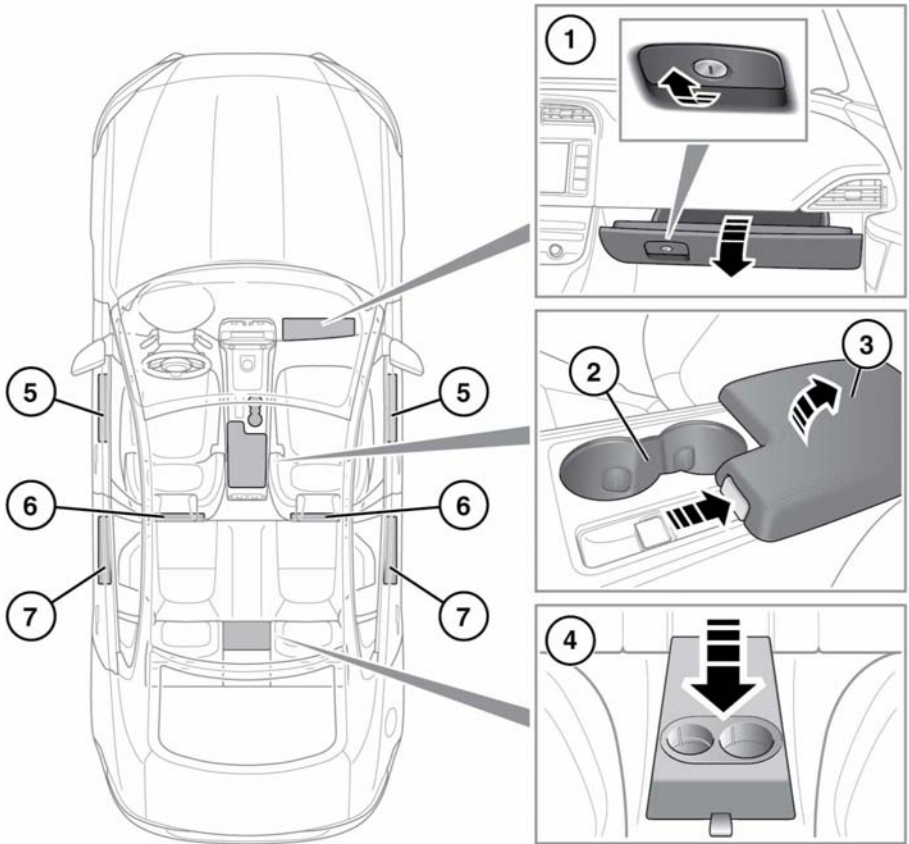
REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



E164036

With the front of the remote control facing upwards, press down on the rear of the access cover and push completely off to reveal the battery compartment. Note that the battery should be inserted with the positive side facing upwards. Remove the old battery and making sure that the correct polarity is maintained, insert a new, unused 3 volt CR2032 battery. Align and push the cover back to the original position.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



E165456

1. Glovebox: Pull the release handle to open. The glovebox can be locked/unlocked using the emergency key blade, mounted in the vehicle's Smart key. See 6, **UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

Note: When Valet mode is selected, the glove box will not open.

2. Front Cup holders.



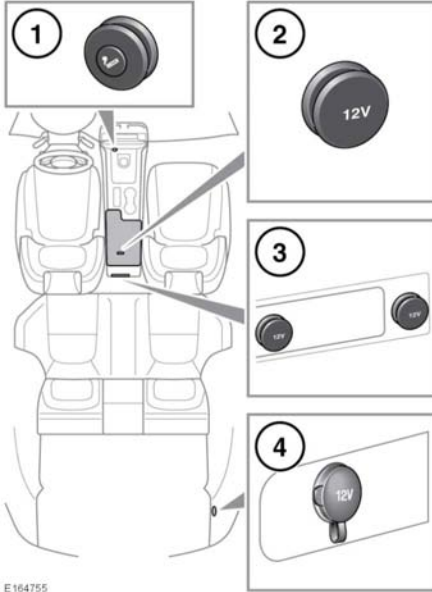
Do not drink, or use the cup holders when driving.

3. Cubby box: Push and hold the release button and then lift to open the cubby box lid. To close, lower the lid and then lightly press to engage the catch.
4. Rear cup holders: Pull the tag at the top of the stowed rear seat's armrest and lower.

Storage compartments

5. Front door stowage.
6. Front seat map pockets.
7. Rear door stowage.
2. Centre power socket.
3. Rear power socket.
4. Luggage compartment power socket.

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



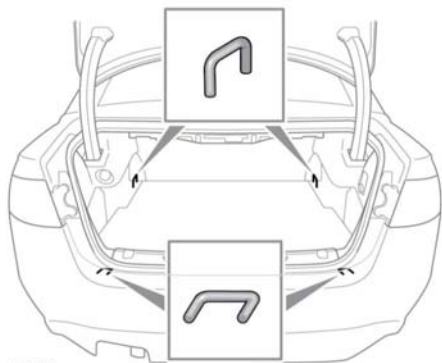
E164755

- ⚠ Only use, Jaguar Land Rover Limited, approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause battery discharge. If you are in any doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.
- ⚠ The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

Note: Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.

1. Front power socket.

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



 **All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured.**

Securing points are provided in the luggage area to assist in safely securing items.

Note: A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

TOWING WEIGHTS

 **Vehicles supplied with a 3.0L petrol engine, will not facilitate towing.**

See **249, WEIGHTS**, for details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), axle weights, and the load in the vehicle's luggage compartment.

Note: *The trailer's nose weight should also be considered when calculating the GVW.*

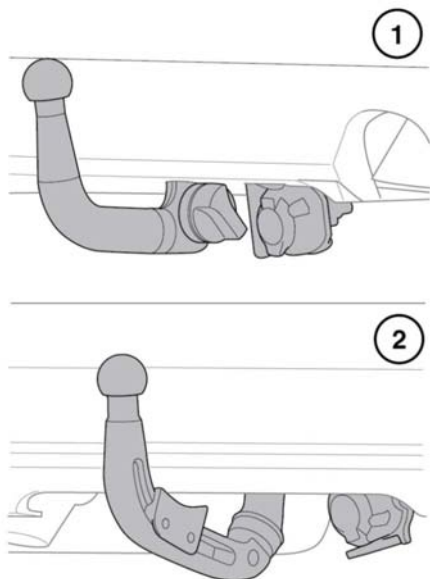
Europe only: When towing, the maximum permissible GVW can be increased by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lb), provided that the road speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph) or less.

Note: *When calculating the rear axle loading, remember that the trailer's nose weight, the load in the vehicle's luggage compartment, the weight on a roof rack, and the weight of the rear seat passengers must all be added together.*

	Engine/transmission Variant	kg (lb)
Unbraked trailers	All variants	750 (1 653)
Braked trailer	All variants with automatic transmission	1 800 (3 968)
Braked trailer	All variants with manual transmission	1 600 (3 527)
Maximum trailer nose weight	All variants	75 (165)
Gross Train Weight (GTW)	2.0L petrol with automatic transmission	3 920 (8 642)
	2.0L diesel with automatic transmission	3 900 (8 598)
	2.0L diesel with manual transmission	3 935 (8 675)

Note: *For every 1 000 metres increase above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.*

TOW BALL OPTIONS



E167073

The available Tow ball options for this vehicle are:

1. Quick release, detachable tow ball. See **91, FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL.**
2. Electrically deployable, powered tow ball. See **92, POWERED TOW BALL.**

Note: The tow ball options are dependent on the market and the vehicle specification.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

When a trailer is attached, TSA will automatically detect when trailer sway is developing. It will then gradually reduce the vehicle's speed, by cutting engine power and applying the brakes to help regain control.

⚠ The TSA will not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.

⚠ The ability of TSA may be reduced when travelling on slippery surfaces.

Note: TSA will not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.

HITCH GUIDANCE

Hitch guidance is a user selectable Touch screen feature that can aid the process of guiding the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch. Use Hitch guidance while reversing the vehicle to a trailer hitch.

Proceed, as follows:

1. Select reverse gear. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the Touch screen will automatically display selectable icons or a menu list. See **124, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM** or see **117, REAR CAMERA.**
2. Touch the Rear camera system's **Hitch assist** icon, or for Surround camera's, tick **Hitch guidance** on the Touch screen to enable the guidance lines to be displayed.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 600 mm (2 ft) of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature is operated to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre carefully until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

TOW ASSIST

Note: Trailer guidance requires a connected trailer to be fitted with a tracking target sticker, which **must** be attached according to specific instructions. Ask a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for details.



E134952

Note: This feature may not operate with all trailer designs.

Trailer guidance aids trailer reversing, by displaying guidance lines on the Touch screen.

Trailer guidance becomes active when a trailer/caravan is attached to the vehicle and the trailer's electrical plug is attached to the vehicle's socket.

Note: The driver's door must be opened and closed after the trailer/caravan is connected to the electrical socket, before the system will detect the connection.

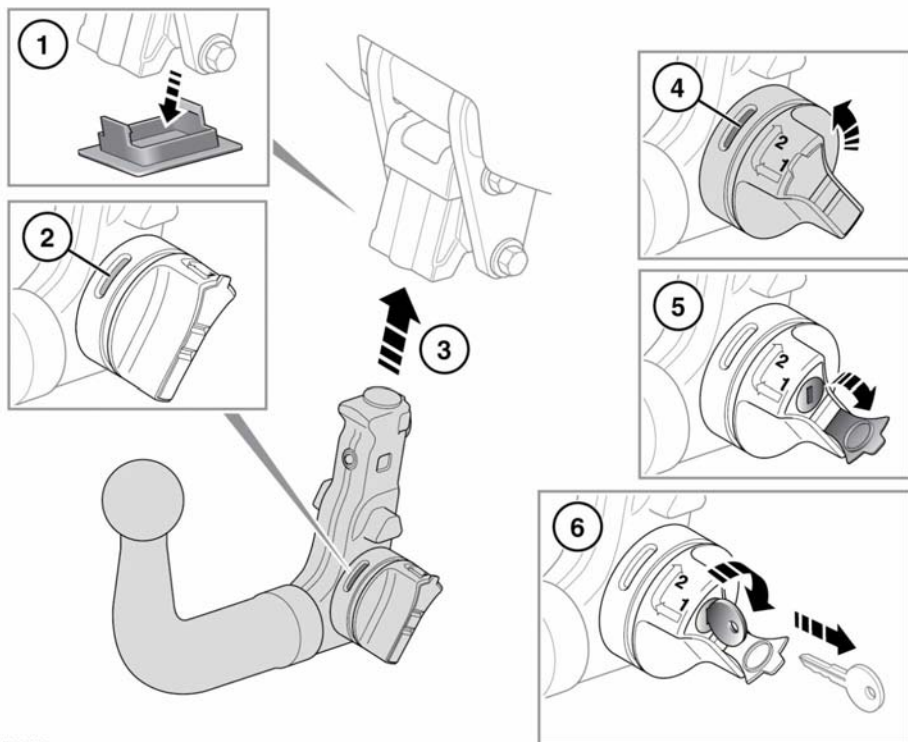
The screen will display a choice for connection. Select **YES** to move to the setup screen. Select **NO** to return to the previous screen.

Note: If the connection is not detected, setup can be manually prompted by touching the Tow assist soft key on the **Camera** menu.

On first use, the setup screens take the user through a series of configuration options for the connected trailer. Information such as trailer hitch length, number of axles, and camera preference, is required to finalise setup. Once completed, the details are stored for future use.

When a new or existing trailer configuration is selected, Trailer guidance automatically displays on the Touch screen when reverse gear is selected. Coloured lines are displayed to indicate the predicted path of both the trailer and the vehicle.

FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL



E166119

Fit the Detachable tow ball as follows:

1. Remove the protective cover from the vehicle mounting and stow it in the tow ball storage area.
2. The tow ball can only be installed when the locking lever is in the unlocked position (red showing).
3. Insert the tow ball into the tow bar mounting and push firmly upwards until the tow ball locks into position.
4. Turn the locking lever towards you until green is showing.

5. Remove the protective cover from the key slot.
6. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the tow ball, then remove the key and refit the protective cover. Store the key in a safe place.



Do not exceed the maximum nose weight for the detachable tow ball. See 88, TOWING WEIGHTS.

When the detachable tow ball is not required for immediate use, it should be removed from the tow bar and stowed in the appropriate place.

REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Remove the Detachable tow ball as follows:

1. Insert the key and turn it counter-clockwise to unlock.
2. Remove the key, then supporting the tow ball, press and turn the locking lever away from you to release.
3. Remove the tow ball from the tow bar and stow it in the luggage compartment stowage area, in the bag provided.

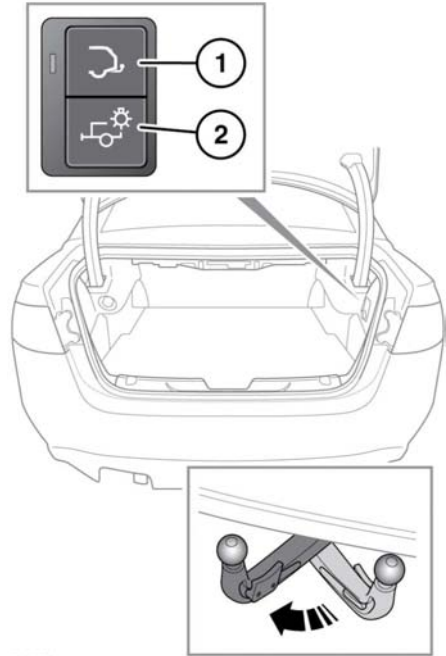
POWERED TOW BALL

Before activating the powered tow ball, make sure that:

- Any trailer is unhitched.
- Any trailer electrical connections are disconnected.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The luggage compartment lid is open.
- The vehicle's transmission is engaged in Park (P) or neutral.

Failure to comply with the above conditions will prevent the powered tow ball from operating. Also a short warning tone will sound if the powered tow ball button is pressed.

Note: If the powered tow ball does not function correctly, refer to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



E167068

1. Powered tow ball button: Press and release to deploy the powered tow ball. Press and release again to stow the powered tow ball.
 - The LED indicator lamp, by the side of the button, will flash slowly while the powered tow ball is being deployed or stowed. An audible tone will also sound.
 - Once deployed, the LED indicator lamp will stop flashing and will be solidly lit.
 - Once stowed, the LED indicator lamp will stop flashing and will be solidly lit for 2 seconds and will then extinguish.
 - To stop movement of the powered tow ball, press the tow ball button. To reset the tow ball, press the tow ball button again. During the reset operation, the powered tow ball will fully stow and then fully deploy.

- If, during deployment of the powered tow ball, an obstruction occurs, tow ball movement will stop. The LED indicator lamp will flash faster, accompanied by a 2 second warning tone. When the obstruction has been cleared, press the tow ball button to reset the tow ball.
- If the vehicle is driven with the tow ball neither fully deployed or fully stowed, a warning tone will sound for 10 seconds. Do not tow with the tow ball in this state.
- In the event of unexpected operation, press the tow ball button to reset the tow ball.



Make sure the powered tow ball is fully deployed before connecting a trailer/caravan.

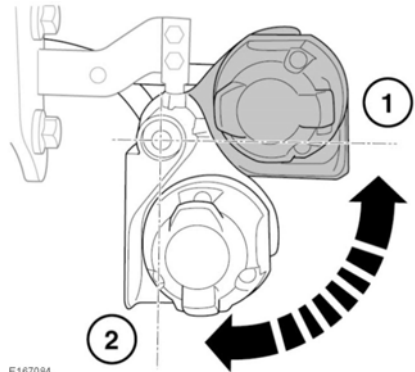
2. Trailer lamp test button: Press to start a 3 minute sequence for both the vehicle and the trailer's lamp testing.
 - For the test to operate, all of the vehicle's lamps should be switched off, the ignition should be switched off and the transmission should be in Park (P) or neutral.
 - The vehicle's lamps and all of the trailer's lamps will operate at the same time so that a visual check can be made of all the lamps.
 - The 3 minute sequence can be stopped, at any time, by pressing the trailer lamp test button again, by manually switching on the vehicle's lamps, or by switching on the ignition.

Note: This test feature only allows an observer to check that the lamps are illuminating. The car does not perform any measurements during this test and faulty trailer lamps will not show any errors during this test.

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION



Attach only approved electrical connectors, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket.



The detachable tow ball, trailer socket should be manually deployed (2) and stowed (1), as illustrated.

The electric deployable tow ball, trailer socket will deploy and stow automatically with the tow ball.

When a trailer's electrical connection is made and the vehicle's direction indicators are used, the trailer warning indicator will flash in time with the direction indicators. See **55, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.


Towing


In the event that the vehicle's direction indicator is used and the symbol does not flash, the trailer's connection should be checked and appropriate action taken to make sure that the trailer's direction indicators are functioning.

Function	Minimum load	Maximum load amps (Watt)
Brake lamps	0.25 amps (6 Watt)	10 amps (120 Watt)
Direction indicators*	0.25 amps (6 Watt)	5 amps (60 Watt)*
Side markers/rear lamps*	-	5 amps (60 Watt)*
Reverse lamps	-	5 amps (60 Watt)
Fog lamp	-	5 amps (60 Watt)
Permanent battery feed	-	15 amps (180 Watt)
Ignition feed	-	15 amps (180 Watt)

* For each side.


ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

 **Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control.**

 **Do not loop the breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball, as it may slide off.**

- To maintain vehicle stability, the trailer's nose load should be set at approximately 7% of the caravan/trailer's gross weight (and a minimum of 4%).
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, the trailer should be loaded to achieve even weight distribution between axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Increase the rear tyre pressures on the towing vehicle to those for maximum vehicle loading conditions.
- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable, safety chain, or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Always connect the breakaway cable or safety chain to the provided connection point. Do not loop it over the tow ball.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the lamps on the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER

 **Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle, or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle. It can also adversely affect vehicle stability and braking, which in turn can lead to a loss of control and an increased braking distance, resulting in a rollover or crash.**

⚠ To preserve handling and stability, only fit Jaguar approved towing accessories.

⚠ Never use towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer. They have not been designed for this purpose and doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in injury or death.

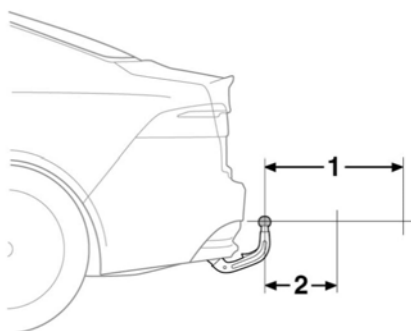
Note: A reduction in the performance of the Air conditioning system is a normal function under high load towing conditions.

Note: Engine power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 1000 metres above sea level and for every additional 1000 metres, deduct 10% from the Gross Train Weight (GTW). See **88, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

The Touch screen can display a rear view to assist with the reversing of the vehicle with a trailer attached. See **124, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM** and also **90, TOW ASSIST**.

TOW BALL MOUNTED ACCESSORIES

ⓘ Before fitting a tow ball mounted accessory, make sure it has been approved for use on Jaguar vehicles. The use of unsuitable equipment can result in severe damage to the tow ball and the tow bar.



E167075

Before fitting an accessory to the tow ball, observe the following guidelines:

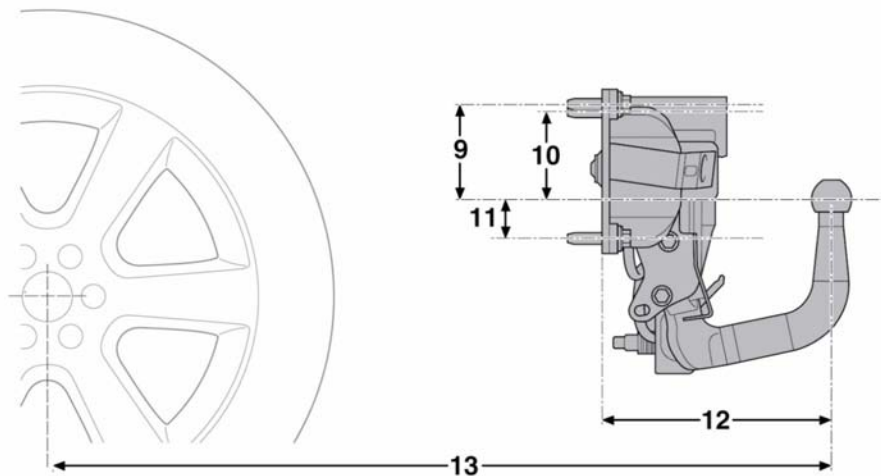
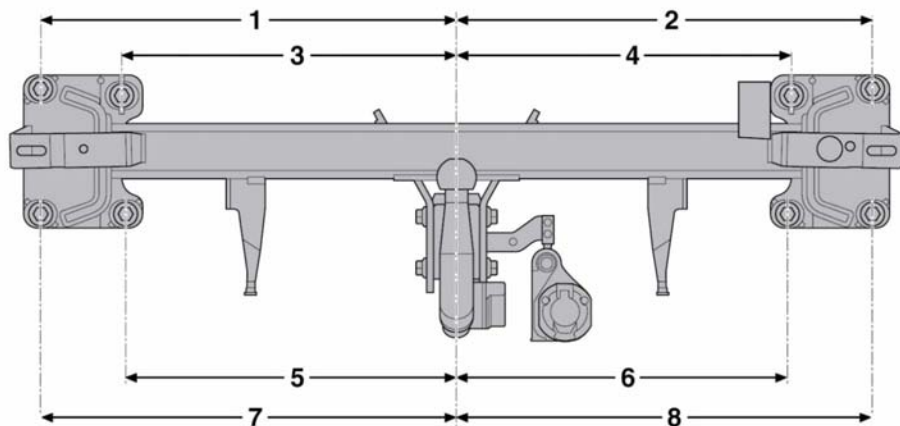
1. The attached accessory must not protrude more than 700 mm (27.5 ins) from the tow ball.
2. The centre of gravity of the mounted equipment and load combined should not exceed a distance of 390 mm (15 ins) from the tow ball. The maximum weight at this distance must not exceed 82.4 kg (182 lb).

Note: The forces exerted by the trailer's nose load and tow ball mounted accessories are different in nature and; therefore, a separate limit applies to both.

Note: Only use a Jaguar approved bicycle rack, catering for a maximum of up to 2 bicycles.

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS

Detachable tow bar



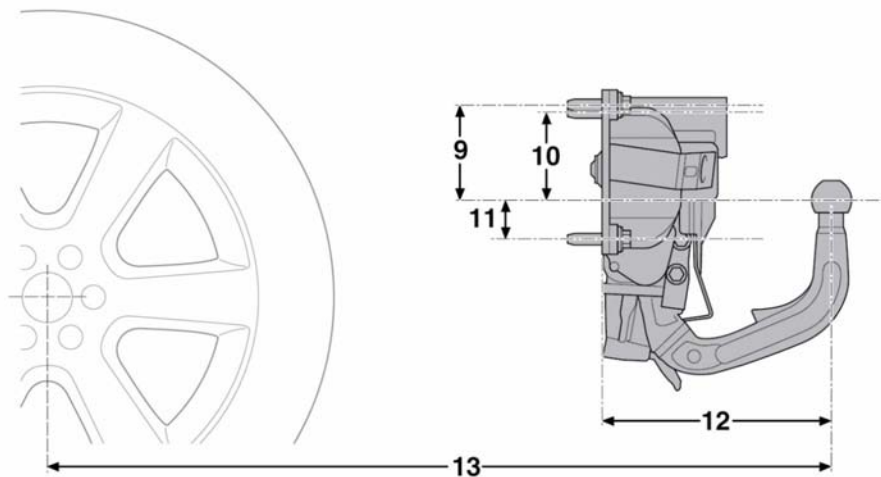
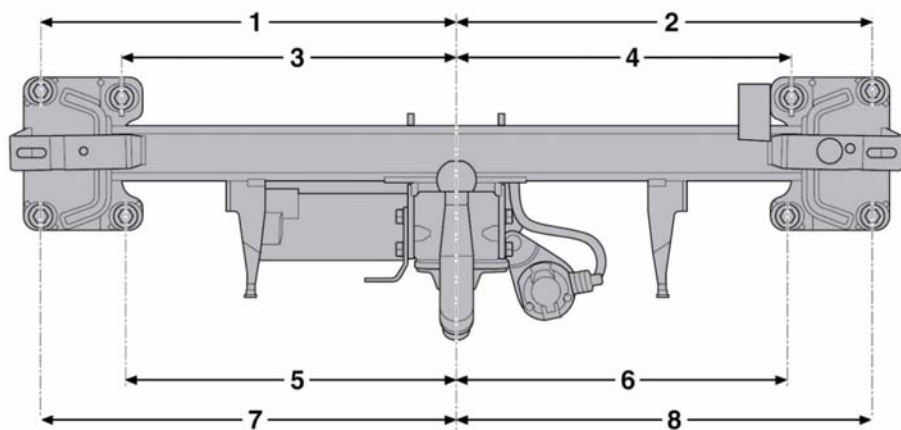
E167040

Dimension	Millimetres	Inches
1	534	21
2	534	21
3	430	16.9
4	430	16.9
5	425	16.7
6	425	16.7
7	534	21
8	534	21
9	114	4.5
10	106	4.2
11	47	1.9
12	275	10.8
13	1 080	42.5

Note: Dimensions refer to towing equipment officially released by Jaguar.

Towing

Deployable tow bar




E167042


Dimension	Millimetres	Inches
1	534	21
2	534	21
3	430	16.9
4	430	16.9
5	425	16.7
6	425	16.7
7	534	21
8	534	21
9	114	4.5
10	106	4.2
11	47	1.9
12	275	10.8
13	1 080	42.5

Note: Dimensions refer to towing equipment officially released by Jaguar.

Starting the engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

 **Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.**

 If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: *The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless start backup.*

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (P) or Neutral (N) is selected.
3. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.
Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: *For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins will be longer in low ambient temperatures due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay, the brake pedal must remain pressed.*


Once the engine has started, the brake pedal (or clutch pedal) can be released, if it is safe to do so.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

While the vehicle is stationary:

1. Make sure Park (P) is selected for vehicles with an automatic transmission or neutral for a manual transmission vehicle. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

While the vehicle is moving:

 It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds. With either method, **Engine Stop Button Pressed** is displayed in the Message centre.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the ignition without starting the engine:

1. With a valid Smart key inside the vehicle:
 - Vehicles with an automatic transmission, make sure that the brake pedal is NOT pressed.

 If the brake pedal is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

- Vehicles with a manual transmission, make sure that the clutch pedal is NOT pressed.

 If the clutch pedal is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps illuminate in the Instrument panel. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

ROLLING RE-START

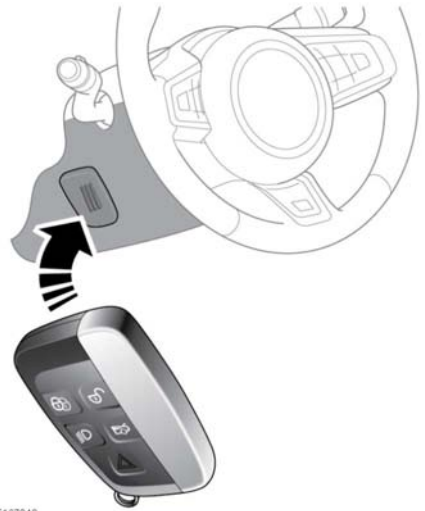
Note: The engine **START/STOP** button will be inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.

A rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (**N**) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade, or the Smart key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the Keyless start backup feature to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The Keyless start backup feature can only be used when the following message **Smart Key Not Recognised - Reposition or Place As Shown and Press Start Button** is displayed in the Message centre.



E167240

1. Position the Smart key flat against the side of the steering column with the buttons facing outwards.
Note: The steering column has markings on the side to aid placement of the Smart key.
2. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.
Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal (or the clutch pedal for manual transmission) can be released, if it is safe to do so.

If the Smart key is not recognised, or the engine still fails to start, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Intelligent stop/start

INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Intelligent stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine will switch off if the vehicle is stopped, for example, at traffic lights. When the brake pedal is released and a drive gear is selected, the engine will restart automatically.

During operation of the Intelligent stop/start system, a warning lamp will illuminate. See **54, INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)**.

To activate an automatic engine stop, apply sufficient brake pressure, to safely stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and make sure the vehicle is stationary. For manual transmissions, neutral must also be selected and the clutch pedal fully released.

To activate an automatic engine restart, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected. For manual transmissions, the engine will restart when the clutch pedal is fully pressed, before engaging a gear.

The engine will also restart if one of the following occurs:

- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- An automatic transmission shift paddle is used to select a gear.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- The Climate control system demand increases.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 1 km/h (0.5 mph).
- The battery's charge becomes low.
- Brake vacuum has been reduced (for example, using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off).

The following conditions will prevent an automatic engine stop:

- An automatic transmission shift paddle has been used to select a gear.
- The external temperature is less than approximately 0°C (32°F).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C (104°F).
- The engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The Climate control system demand requires the engine to be running (for example, in Defrost mode).
- The battery's charge is low.
- The bonnet is opened.
- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.

DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START



To switch the system off, press the Intelligent stop/start button. This is located on the centre console, close to the gear selector. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: The engine will restart automatically if the button is pressed while an automatic engine stop is in progress.

To confirm that the system is off, the message **Auto Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed in the Message centre.

Note: The Intelligent stop/start system will automatically reactivate the next time the ignition is switched on.

If the Intelligent stop/start button is pressed while there is a fault, the message **Auto Stop/Start Not Available** is displayed.

DRIVER EXIT

Note: The Driver exit feature is only available when Intelligent stop/start is enabled.

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle will detect when a driver is not present, and automatically switch off the ignition.

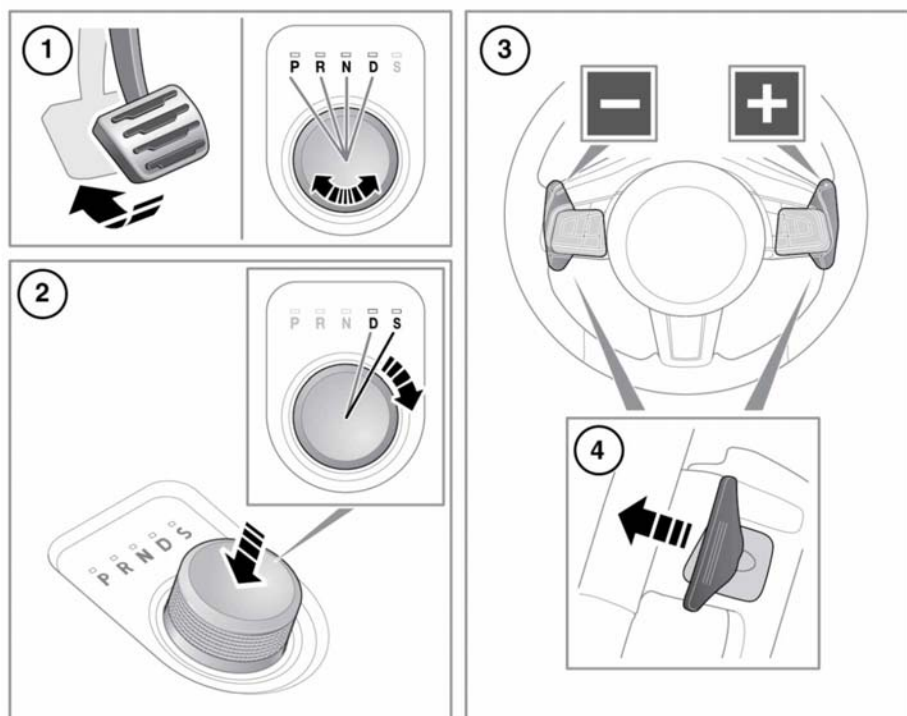
If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the Driver exit feature will switch the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the Driver exit feature will switch the vehicle's ignition off, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

Once the vehicle's ignition has been switched off, the vehicle can be locked. See **13, SINGLE LOCKING**.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



E166313

The rotary gear selector rotates in either direction. At engine start-up, the rotary gear selector elevates up from its lowered, stowed position.

The gear selection status of the rotary gear selector and the steering wheel's gear selector paddles (Sequential shift), will be displayed in the Message centre.

1. To select Drive (**D**), Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**), press the brake pedal and rotate the gear selector. The relative LED indicator lamp, by the gear selector, will illuminate.

While in **D**, the gear changing is fully automatic. The gear change shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed.

To achieve rapid acceleration (kick-down) while in **D**, quickly press the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing will resume.

Note: Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N** or **P**, make sure the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.

Note: If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the brake pedal is applied, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove the pressure from the gear selector, make sure the brake pedal is applied and then select the required gear again.

- To select Sport (**S**) mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The relative LED by the gear selector will illuminate.

The transmission will stay in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance.

To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.

- Sequential shift gear selector paddles: Allows manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** positions. Lightly pull the left paddle for down-shifts or lightly pull the right paddle for up-shifts. Sequential shift can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.

A gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **54, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

Note: If continued use of the Sequential shift gear selector paddles is required, select **S**.

Note: The gear shift paddles can be configured to be **Active in S only** or **Active in D & S** via the **Driving Features** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

- To manually change gear, briefly pull the relevant steering wheel gear shift paddle.

To exit the manual gear selection mode, either pull and hold the up-shift paddle for approximately one second (to return directly to automatic operation in **D** or **S**) or, if in **S**, rotate the rotary gear selector to the **D** position.



Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion.



Never select **R** while the vehicle is in forward motion.



Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backwards.



Do not rev the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed while selecting **D** or **R**, or while the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected.



Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary with a drive gear selected and the engine running. Always select **P** or **N** if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period.

If the rotary gear selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The gear selector should elevate.

If the rotary gear selector fails to elevate and there is no obstruction, a fault in the system is indicated. The gear selector can be used in the lowered position, but be aware that it will not automatically select **P** when the engine is switched off. Therefore, **P** should be selected manually. The fault should be rectified by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

ROTARY GEAR SELECTOR

Park (**P**) should be selected before switching off the engine. If any other gear is selected at switch off, the selector will move to **P** before retracting into the centre console.

If the engine is switched off with Neutral (**N**) selected, the system will wait for 10 minutes before selecting **P**. This procedure allows enough time for the vehicle to be conveyed through a car wash.

Note: This procedure should not be used for vehicle recovery purposes.

MANUAL GEAR SELECTION

Check the status of the **Active in S only** or **Active in D & S** settings for the **Gear Shift Paddles** menu, located in the **Driving Features** menu list. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

When the gear selector is in the **D** position (unless set to **Active in S only** mode), manual gear selection mode may be directly accessed by the single action of operating the steering wheel mounted, gear shift paddles (Sequential shift).

If continued use of the manual gear selection mode (Sequential shift) is required, then the rotary gear selector should be moved to the **S** position.

If the rotary gear selector remains in the **D** position, temporary use of the manual gear selection mode will be held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering, or continuing to request gear shift changes via the steering wheel paddles.

LIMP-HOME MODE

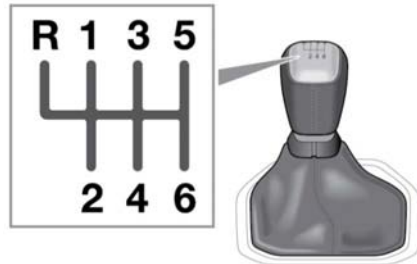
In the event of an electrical or mechanical failure, transmission operation will be limited. **P, R, N, D,** and **S** may still be used to enable the vehicle to be driven to a safe area.

Note: The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance will be reduced and must take this into account when driving. Also, the use of the steering wheel mounted, gear shift paddles (Sequential shift) will be disabled. In this event, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Some faults will cause the rotary gear selector to be locked in position until the ignition is switched off. If the selected range flashes, it signifies that the driver's request cannot be engaged. In this event, select **N** and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to select the requested gear, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION



E166254



Never attempt to select reverse gear when the vehicle is travelling forwards. Selecting reverse gear in these circumstances could lead to serious and costly repairs to your vehicle.

Vehicles with a manual transmission have an automated function, which is designed to assist the driver when pulling away from a standing start.

When pulling away, the driver may notice the engine speed increase slightly. If the accelerator pedal is pressed further, the driver may also notice that the engine speed is controlled automatically to an appropriate limit, depending on how far the accelerator pedal is pressed.

In each case, normal engine speed control will be returned fully to the driver, once the manoeuvre has been completed.

Manual transmission vehicles also feature a gear shift indicator warning lamp. The warning lamp will illuminate when it is most appropriate to change gear. See **54, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

Stability control

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)



Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users.

DSC is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on. It controls vehicle stability in critical driving situations. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer or oversteer, and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine power output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

If wheel spin is detected, the system will intervene to control it by reducing engine power output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. This action will help to improve acceleration.

Also see, **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

TRACDSC

TracDSC is an alternative setting of DSC, with reduced system interventions.



Vehicle safety may be reduced by inappropriate use of TracDSC.

TracDSC enhances the DSC settings for maximum traction in adverse conditions and for different road surfaces, for example, compacted snow, gravel, and sand. This will help to increase the available traction, without having to completely lose the benefits of DSC.



TracDSC should only be used when necessary for the prevailing conditions.



With TracDSC engaged, traction may be increased, although stability may be reduced compared to normal DSC.

The reduced system intervention of TracDSC, also enables a more involved and focused driving experience.

Conditions where the use of TracDSC would be advantageous or necessary are, as follows:

- To maximise driver involvement.
- To make progress in adverse conditions and on different road surfaces, for example, compacted snow, gravel, and sand.



DSC must be switched off when traction devices are fitted, for example, snow chains and snow socks.

SWITCHING BETWEEN DSC AND TRACDSC



To switch between DSC and TracDSC, press and hold the **DSC OFF** button (located on the centre console, close to the gear selector) for less than 3 seconds. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**. The Message centre will temporarily display either **TracDSC** or **DSC ON**.

The DSC Off warning lamp will illuminate while TracDSC is enabled, to confirm that DSC is disabled. See **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

The DSC warning lamp will flash when DSC or TracDSC is active (Cruise control will automatically disengage if this occurs). See **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

SWITCHING DSC OFF

To switch DSC off, press and hold the **DSC OFF** button for more than 3 seconds.

The Message centre will display **DSC OFF** and a short warning chime will sound. The DSC Off warning lamp will also illuminate to confirm that DSC is disabled. See **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

SWITCHING DSC ON

To switch DSC on, press and release the DSC **OFF** button.

The DSC system will switch on and the Message centre will temporarily display **DSC ON**.

The **DSC OFF** warning lamp will extinguish to confirm that DSC is enabled. See **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

Note: *Switching the engine off and then on again, will always revert the DSC status to **DSC ON**, regardless of which mode is selected.*


The DSC warning lamp will flash when DSC is active (Cruise control will automatically disengage if this occurs). See **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.


ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS


See **51, GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**. If this warning lamp illuminates and the message **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. Also see **51, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**. If the fault persists, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

 Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion.

 Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.

 If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.

 Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the pedals. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide even with the brakes applied. This is because without wheel rotation, the ABS cannot determine vehicle movement.

To counteract this, briefly release the brakes to allow some wheel rotation. Then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

EBD controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle, for example), EBD will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, EBD will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.

A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **51, BRAKE (RED)**. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, EBA automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly, but conditions mean that the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) operates on the front wheels, EBA will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), will also have the Advanced emergency brake assist system available. See **133, ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST**.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **51, BRAKE (RED)**. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)



The AEB system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.



Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Note: The AEB system is an option in some markets.

Note: The fitment of the AEB system is market and model dependent.

The AEB system uses the forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to identify a collision risk. AEB and Forward collision warning are enabled every time the vehicle is switched on but may be disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See 47,

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.

Note: In order for the AEB system to work correctly, make sure that the windscreen is kept clean and the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers or any other objects.

AEB is provided to mitigate the severity, and in some instances avoid a rear-end collision between the host vehicle and other vehicles that are in its forward path.

When a collision risk is detected, a Forward collision warning is displayed in the Message centre. If avoiding action is not taken and a collision is not avoidable, the brakes will automatically be applied. After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes will only be applied for a few seconds.

If the AEB system has started to engage, the driver can override it's operation via steering or accelerator inputs, causing the system to disengage. This is to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

Note: The efficiency of the system is dependent on the condition of the road surface and the condition of the vehicle's tyres, braking system and vehicle speed.

AEB will not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.
- The cameras are dirty or obstructed.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) or above 80 km/h (50 mph).
- When visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions (for example, heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.).

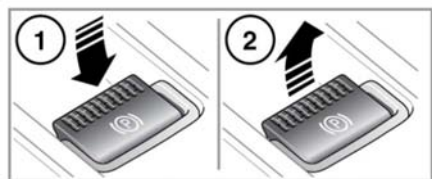
Note: On initial vehicle start-up, the AEB system may require an initialization period before it is fully functional. This is indicated by a warning message in the Message centre. During this period the efficiency of the AEB system is limited.

Note: If the vehicle's windscreen is replaced, or the camera located above the rear-view mirror is moved or replaced, AEB should be re-calibrated. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

- ❗ The parking brakes operate on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.
- ❗ Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.

Note: *If the vehicle is constantly used in arduous conditions, then extra maintenance and adjustment of the EPB will be required. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*



1. With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch. This will release the EPB.
2. With the vehicle stationary, pull the EPB switch up and release it, to apply the EPB. The Parking brake warning lamp will illuminate to indicate that the EPB is applied. See **52, PARKING BRAKE (RED)**.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle will be brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps will not be illuminated.

- ❗ Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied, or repeated use of the EPB to slow the vehicle, may cause serious damage to the brake system.

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), pulling on the EPB switch and holding gives a gradual reduction in the speed, as long as the accelerator pedal is released. The brake warning lamp will illuminate, accompanied by a warning tone and a warning message in the Message centre. The stop lamps will illuminate.

If the vehicle is stationary with the EPB applied and the transmission is engaged in a forward or reverse gear, pressing the accelerator pedal will gradually release the EPB and allow the vehicle to drive away smoothly.

Note: *Automatic release of the EPB is only possible when the driver's door is closed, or the driver's seat belt is buckled.*

When shifting an automatic transmission from Park (P) with the EPB applied, the EPB will automatically release to allow a smooth drive away.

If the system detects a fault with the EPB, the amber brake warning lamp will illuminate, accompanied by a message in the Message centre.

If the system detects a fault while the EPB is operating, the red Parking brake warning lamp will flash, accompanied by a message in the Message centre.

Note: *The red Parking brake warning lamp will continue to be illuminated for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.*

EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL (ESS)

ESS automatically activates the hazard warning lamps during emergency braking, to warn other road users and reduce the risk of a collision.

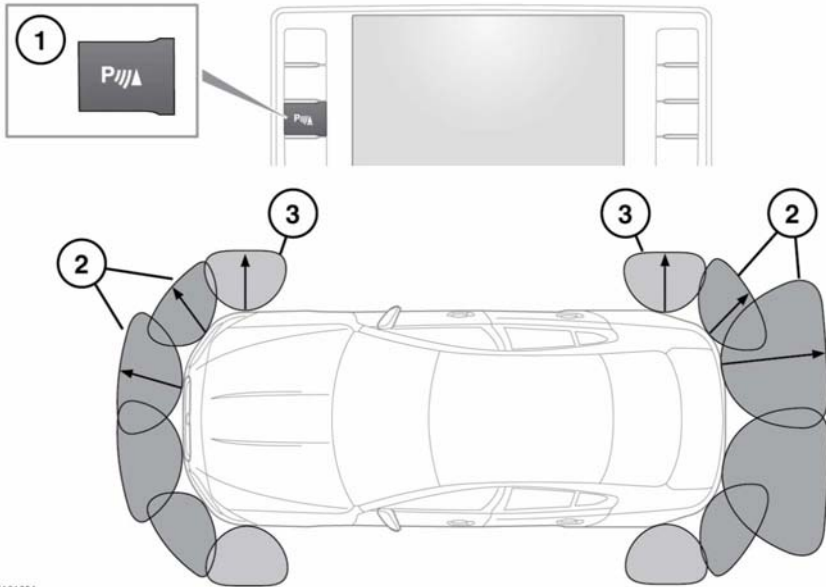
E 162703

HILL START ASSIST

Hill start assist activates when starting a hill ascent from a stationary position. When the brake pedal is released, Hill start assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to move away without rolling backwards.

Any fault with the Hill start assist system will be indicated by the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF (AMBER) warning lamp being illuminated and a message in the Message centre. See **53, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

USING THE PARKING AID



E161894

1. Parking aid button.
2. Parking aid sensor detection zones.
3. 360° Park Distance Control sensor detection zones.



Parking aids and 360° Park Distance Control sensors will not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring.



The Parking aid and 360° Park Distance Control sensors may not detect some obstructions, for example narrow posts or small objects close to the ground.



If accessories, for example, a tow bar, are fitted to the rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when reversing. The rear sensors will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.

Note: If a trailer is connected to a Jaguar approved trailer socket, the rear sensors will be disabled.

Parking aids

The Parking aid and 360° Park Distance Control systems assist the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front, side, and rear of the vehicle will be displayed on the Touch screen. The four corner sensors provide the 360° Park Distance Control monitoring along the vehicle sides. While the vehicle is passing an object that is within sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems will calculate its trajectory within the 360° Park Distance Control monitored area.

While the vehicle is stationary and an object/person approaches from the side, the sensors will not detect it. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects/persons. In both of these situations, an X will be displayed on the Touch screen in the vehicle's blind spots

The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a 1.2 m (4 ft) area around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a 1.8 m (6 ft) area at the rear of the vehicle.

The Parking aid system is automatically activated when Reverse (R) gear is selected, then the front, rear, and side sensors will be activated. The sensors will remain active until the vehicle's speed reaches 16 km/h (10 mph). If a forward gear is subsequently selected, the front, rear, and side sensors will remain active until the vehicle's speed reaches 16 km/h (10 mph).

By pressing and holding the Parking aid button (1) for 3 seconds, the Parking aid system will enter into an Auto-on mode, which will activate the front and side sensors, when the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 16 km/h (10 mph), in a forward direction. The Parking aid button's LED lamp will flash for a few seconds to confirm. This Auto-on mode will still remain active after the ignition is switched off and on again. To disable the Auto-on mode, press and hold the Parking aid button for 3 seconds. The Parking aid button's LED lamp will flash for a few seconds to confirm.

Note: To manually enable the front and side sensors in a forward direction, press the Parking aid button for less than 3 seconds. The LED lamp will illuminate to confirm. Press the button again to disable the temporary use of this setting. The LED lamp will extinguish to confirm.

Note: The Parking aid system will always be temporarily disabled if the vehicle's speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

When objects are detected, the Parking aid system will emit a warning tone which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to an object. The tone becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300 mm (12 ins).

Note: The warning tone will stop when the distance between the vehicle and the object remains constant.

Note: If the Parking aid system does not detect an object likely to come into contact with the vehicle, it will not display any tracking information on the Touch screen.

Note: The sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance. See 200, SENSORS AND CAMERAS.

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone will sound and the switch indicator will flash. Also a graphic and the message **Parking Aid is not available. Please consult your dealer** will be displayed on the Touch screen. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

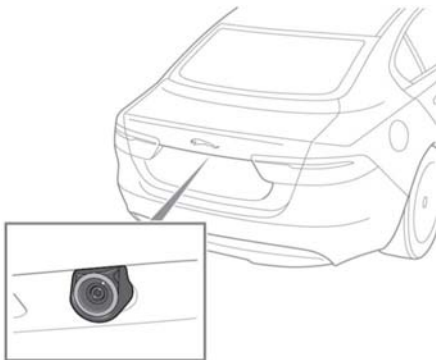
REAR CAMERA



It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.



Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.



E161382

The Rear camera is located on the luggage compartment lid.

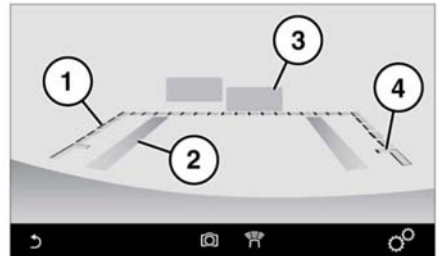
Note: Make sure that this area is kept clean and free from obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

When Reverse (R) gear is selected, the Touch screen will automatically display a wide-angle, colour image from the rear of your vehicle.

Note: Vehicles with a Surround camera system can also split the screen's rear view image, to also display a 360° view. See **124, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

The Rear camera provides a rear-view image to assist in reversing the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing guidelines.

Note: The Rear camera display has priority over the Parking aids display. To cancel the Rear camera display at any time, push the **Home** menu button or touch the back soft key.



E164947

1. Dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including the exterior mirrors).
2. Solid line: The projected path, based on the current steering wheel position.
3. Parking sensor activation: A coloured area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
4. Luggage compartment lid access guidance line: Do not reverse beyond this point if access is required to the luggage compartment.

To adjust the Rear camera settings while in **R**, touch anywhere on the Touch screen to display the user options.

Note: The user options menu/icon selection will differ for vehicles with/without a Surround camera system.

Parking aids

For vehicles fitted with only a Rear camera, touch the icon for the feature required and then the back icon:



Touch to enable/disable the Park assist guidance lines.

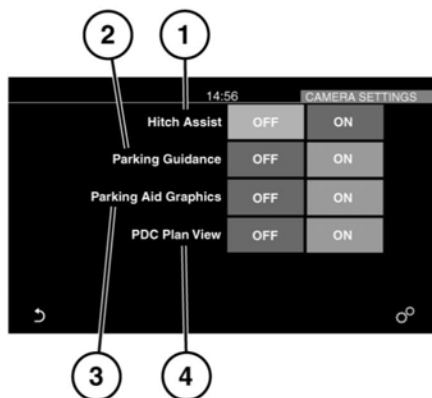


Touch to enable/disable the sensor/s active graphics.



Touch to enable/disable Hitch assist guidance lines. Use this feature to aid the process of guiding the vehicle to a towing hitch. A single line is displayed as the reversing guidance line. See **89, HITCH GUIDANCE**.

For vehicles fitted with a Surround camera system:

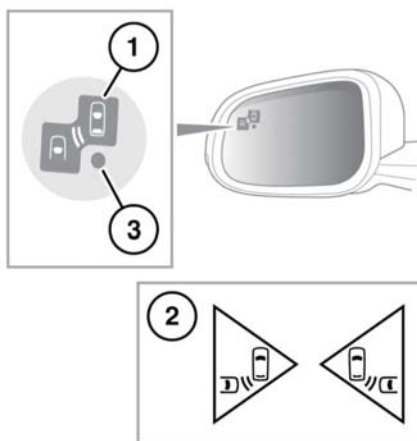


1. **Hitch Assist:** Select **OFF** or **ON**. See **89, HITCH GUIDANCE**.
2. **Parking Guidance:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
3. **Parking Aid Graphics:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
4. **PDC Plan View:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.


The Rear camera display on the Touch screen will discontinue when either of the following apply:

- A forward gear is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- A forward gear is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION



E168618

 **The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation, and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.**

Note: RTD is automatically disabled when a trailer is connected and when Park assist is active.

In addition to the functionality provided by the rear-view camera, the RTD system provides a warning to the driver of any moving vehicle, at either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing manoeuvre.

An amber warning icon (1) will flash in the relevant exterior mirror and an audible warning will be emitted to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. The Rear camera screen or the Parking aid screen will also show a warning icon (2) on the relevant side(s) of the screen. To switch between the Rear camera and the Parking aid screen, touch the camera image or the **Cameras** icon, accordingly.

The system can be enabled or disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. When RTD is disabled, an amber dot (3) will be displayed in both exterior mirrors.

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION SENSORS

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system will automatically disable if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** appears in the Message centre.

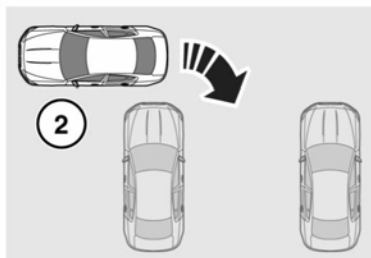
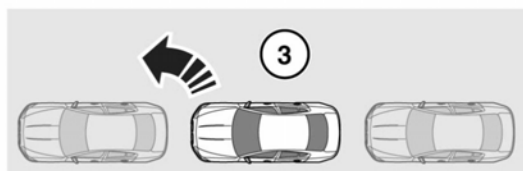
Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

If a fault with a radar sensor is detected, an amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault occurs, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

PARK ASSIST



E161404

Park assist is an aid to manoeuvring the vehicle in and out of parking spaces and parking bays. Park assist will take control of the vehicle's steering system to manoeuvre the vehicle.

⚠ The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake throughout the parking manoeuvre.

Note: A Park assist manoeuvre can be cancelled by holding/turning the steering wheel, or by pressing the Park assist button.

Park assist comprises of 3 different features:

- 1. Parallel parking:** For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
- 2. Perpendicular parking:** For reversing into a parking space that is at 90° to the vehicle.
- 3. Parking exit:** For exiting from a parallel parking space.

All Park assist instructions are displayed in the Message centre.



Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring and always use your mirrors.



Park assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.



Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g., narrow posts, small objects close to the ground, mesh fences and, in some circumstances, bicycles or motor cycles parked alongside the kerb.



All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

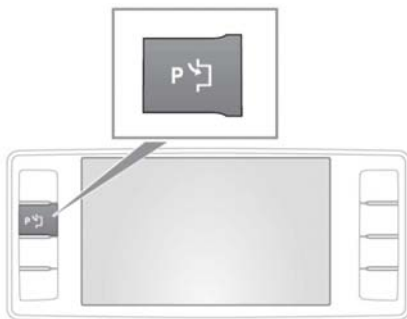


- Park assist must not be used if:
- A temporary spare wheel is in use.
 - A sensor is damaged or the bumper is damaged sufficiently to affect a sensor mounting point.
 - A sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, a trailer, stickers, etc.
 - The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter, for example, a trailer.

Note: All of the doors and the luggage compartment must be securely closed when using Park assist.

Note: During any Park assist manoeuvre, the Parking aid system will remain active and will sound when objects are detected near the vehicle.

SELECTING PARK ASSIST



E 161396

A short press of the Park assist button will switch the system on. The LED indicator lamp on the Park assist button will illuminate.

The Park assist button can be used to scroll through the 3 Park assist options:

1. A first press of the button switches the system on, and selects Parallel park.
2. A second press of the button selects Perpendicular park.
3. A third press of the button selects Parking exit.
4. A fourth press switches the system off; the LED indicator lamp will extinguish.

When selected, all instructions for the Park assist options are displayed in the Message centre. Always take action when the text or audio alerts an instruction.

USING PARK ASSIST

For assistance when parking, select Parallel park or Perpendicular park.

As the vehicle is driven forwards, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

Note: For Park assist to search effectively, maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m (1.6 ft to 4.9 ft) between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles/obstacles between which you wish to park.

Note: When first activated, Park assist searches for a space on the passenger side of the vehicle. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction (using the direction indicator).

Note: The Park assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph). When Park assist is activated, a previous space may already have been located. To obtain a previous space on the other side, signal a turn in that direction.

When a suitable space is found, a short confirmation tone is given and a message is displayed in the Message centre.


Note: If Park assist senses that other vehicles are too close on either side to perform a parking manoeuvre, a space will be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch Park assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.

For assistance in exiting a parking space, select Parking exit.


For Parking exit to operate correctly, your vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in front of your vehicle.
- Parked in front and behind your vehicle.

Note: The Parking exit feature will only operate when your vehicle has been parallel parked. Parking exit will not manoeuvre your vehicle from a perpendicular parking space.

 Do not perform a Parking exit manoeuvre until the message **Drive forward with care** is displayed in the Message centre.

For all 3 Park assist features, follow the instructions displayed in the Message centre until the parking or exiting manoeuvre has been completed.

 Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout.

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph) during the manoeuvre, Park assist will display a message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 5 km/h (3 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph), Park assist will deactivate.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone will sound and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS



Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. It is the driver's responsibility, at all times, to make sure that reversing manoeuvres are carried out safely.

Park assist may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.
- The vehicle has been fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres, or there is significant tyre wear.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flat bed truck, snow plough, or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or curve.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, or snow.
- The weather is foggy, raining, or snowing.
- The road surface is bumpy such as gravel.
- A tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- A trailer is connected.
Note: If a trailer is connected to a Jaguar approved trailer socket, the Park assist system will be disabled.
- It encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.

- It encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- It encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

Park assist is not searching for a parking space

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling at a speed above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow.

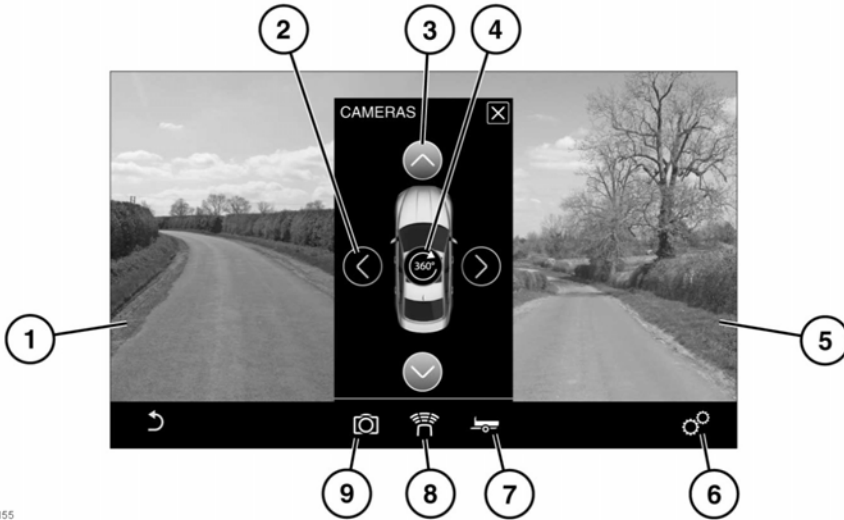
Park assist does not offer a certain parking space

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow.
- The space may not be large enough or there may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven too far away (more than 1.5 m [5 ft]) from a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven too close (within 41 cm [16 in]) to a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in reverse. Park assist will only search for a parking space when the vehicle is travelling in a forward direction.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

Park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space

One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **122, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM



E171155

⚠ It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

📹 To switch on the Surround camera system, press the button on the left-side of the Touch screen or select **Cameras** in **Extra features**. See **78, EXTRA FEATURES**.

1. Left-side split screen image.
2. Camera selection arrow (not selected).
3. Camera selection arrow (camera selected).
4. 360° view: Touch to display a birds-eye view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all 4 cameras.
5. Right-side split screen image.
6. Touch to select the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu.
 - **Hitch Assist**, select **OFF** or **ON**.

- **Parking Guidance**, select **OFF** or **ON**.
- **Parking Aid Graphics**, select **OFF** or **ON**.
- **PDC Plan View**, select **OFF** or **ON**.

7. Touch to select **Trailer assist**. Before towing, select to add a trailer to the system or select a trailer already entered into the system. To add a trailer, follow the on-screen instructions.

8. Touch to select **Parking aids**. See **115, USING THE PARKING AID**.

9. Touch to select **Surround cameras**.

A maximum of 2 views can be displayed at one time (instead of the 360° view). To change a camera view if 2 views are already selected, one of the views has to be deselected first.

📺 When shown, touch to enlarge to full screen or a wider view image.

General information:

The location of the 4 surround cameras are:

- One located on the centre of the front lower grille.
- One on the luggage compartment lid, above the rear number plate.
- One underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.

Note: The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.



To maintain maximum performance, the cameras should be kept free from ice, frost and dirt. See 200, SENSORS AND CAMERAS.

Camera shortcuts



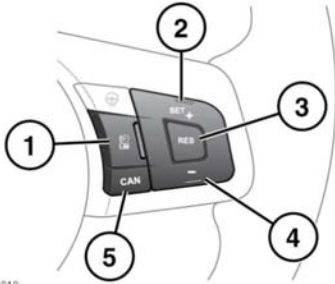
Press the Surround camera hard button for the following shortcut options:

- When in Reverse (**R**):
 - Press once to select the **Rear Junction View**.
 - Press twice to select the **T Junction View**.
 - Press a third time to return to the **Rear Junction View**.
- When in a forward gear, at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph):
 - Press once to select the **T Junction View**.
 - Press twice to select the **Rear Junction View**.
 - Press a third time to return to the **T Junction View**.
- When in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):
 - Press once to select the **Plan View**.
 - Press twice to select the **T Junction View**.
 - Press a third time to select the **Rear Junction View**.

Automatic speed limiter (ASL)

ASL CONTROLS

⚠ In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed.



E164949

- 1. LIM:** Press to switch between the Cruise control and ASL systems. These systems cannot be used simultaneously. The ASL warning lamp will illuminate when ASL is active. See **53, AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.

ⓘ When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either Cruise control or ASL, will automatically be recalled and activated. The set speed will not be recalled.

Note: ASL only operates at speeds between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 240 km/h (150 mph). However, the speed limit can be set while the vehicle is stationary.

- 2. SET+:** Press to set or increase the speed limit. The set speed limit will be displayed in the Message centre.

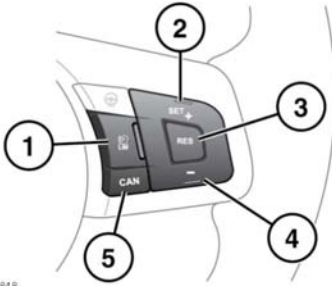
When a speed has been set, the engine will respond normally, up to the set speed. Further accelerator pressure will not increase the speed beyond the set speed unless sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown) is applied. If kickdown is initiated, ASL will be suspended.

- 3. RES:** Press to resume ASL assistance. ASL will only resume if the vehicle's speed is less than the set speed and greater than 30 km/h (18 mph). If these criteria are not met, a message will be displayed in the Message centre.
- 4.** Press (-) to decrease the speed limit. The set speed limit will be displayed in the Message centre.
- 5. CAN:** Press to suspend ASL assistance. ASL can also be temporarily suspended by applying sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown).

USING CRUISE CONTROL



In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driver intervention may be required.



E164846

The Cruise control system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

- 1. LIM:** Press to switch between Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) and Cruise control systems. These systems cannot be used simultaneously. The Cruise control warning lamp will illuminate when Cruise control is active. See **54, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.



When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either Cruise control or ASL, will automatically be recalled and activated. The set speed will not be recalled.

- 2. SET+:** Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed.

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed will be displayed as a marker on the speedometer or a numeric display in the Message centre. The set speed can also be displayed in the Head Up Display (HUD), if enabled. See **49, HEAD UP DISPLAY**.*

The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator.

Note: *Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds above 30 km/h (18 mph).*

- 3. RES:** Press to resume the set speed.



RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

- Press (-) to decrease the set speed.

- 5. CAN:** Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the system's memory. Cruise control will also be cancelled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**), or if the Dynamic driving mode is activated. See **135, DYNAMIC**.

Note: *If the accelerator pedal is pressed for more than 5 minutes, Cruise control will be cancelled.*


Adaptive cruise control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is designed to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead, or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. A speed may be set at between 32 km/h (20 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

Note: For vehicles with a 3.0 litre engine, the upper limit is 200 km/h (124 mph).

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle, using engine control and the brakes.

 **ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system. Additionally, ACC will not react to:**

- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

The ACC system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle to detect objects ahead.

The radar sensor is mounted behind the badge in the centre of the front grille, to provide a clear view forward for the radar beam.

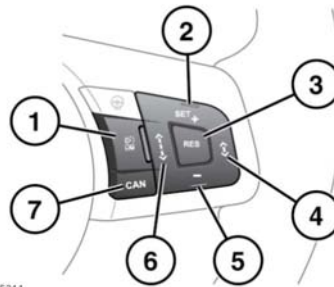
Note: Make sure that this area is kept clean and free from obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

- Use ACC only when conditions are favourable, i.e., main roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Do not use during abrupt or sharp turns, e.g., traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles, or areas shared with pedestrians.
- Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.
- Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely, and be in control of the vehicle at all times.

- Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the radar sensor from operating.


USING ACC

The ACC system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time by the use of the brake or accelerator pedals.



E 165244

1. **LIM:** Press to switch between the Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) and ACC. The systems cannot be used simultaneously. The ACC warning lamp will illuminate when ACC is active. See **54, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.


 When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either ACC or ASL, will automatically be recalled and activated. The set speed will not be recalled.

2. **SET +:** Press to set the vehicle's current speed as the set speed. While ACC is enabled, further pressing of the button will raise the set speed above the vehicle's current speed. The speed of the vehicle will gradually increase to reach the new set speed.

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed will be displayed as a marker on the speedometer or a numeric display in the Message centre. The set speed can also be displayed in the Head Up Display (HUD), if enabled. See 49, **HEAD UP DISPLAY.***

3. **RES:** Press to resume the ACC set speed after it has been disengaged.
4. Press to decrease the Follow mode gap. See **129, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE.**
5. Press (-) to decrease the set speed. The speed of the vehicle will gradually decrease to reach the new set speed.
6. Press to increase the Follow mode gap.
7. **CAN:** Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.

ENTERING FOLLOW MODE

 **When in Follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.**

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator and the set road speed will be maintained.

If a vehicle ahead enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, this vehicle's speed will adjust automatically until the gap to the vehicle ahead corresponds to the gap setting. The vehicle is now in **follow mode**.

The Follow mode warning lamp will illuminate to confirm Follow mode is operational. See **53, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER).**

The Message centre will display the gap set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle will then maintain the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
- A new gap setting is chosen.

If necessary, the vehicle's brakes will be automatically applied, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by ACC is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

Note: *Driver braking will cancel ACC.*

If ACC predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, then an audible warning will sound while ACC continues to brake.

DRIVER INTERVENE will be displayed in the Message centre. Take immediate action.

When in Follow mode, the vehicle will automatically return to the set speed when the road ahead is clear, for instance when:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed, or changes lane.
- You change lane to either side or enter an exit lane.

The driver should intervene, if appropriate.

If a direction indicator is used, ACC will reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not actioned, the previous gap will be restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if ACC detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead or you are already in another lane.

Follow Mode Off



Follow mode can be disabled by pressing and holding the gap decrease button on the steering wheel, until the Follow mode off icon is displayed in the Message centre. See **128, USING ACC**. The follow mode warning lamp in the Instrument panel will extinguish.

Note: *Follow mode on is the default setting for ACC, hence Follow mode off will be automatically cancelled if ACC is not used for a prolonged period of time and when the ignition is switched off.*

To switch Follow mode back on, briefly press either of the Follow mode gap, increase/decrease buttons. The previous gap settings will resume and the Follow mode (amber) warning lamp will illuminate in the Instrument panel.

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP



It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

4 gap settings are available. The selected gap setting is displayed in the Message centre when the gap adjustment buttons are operated.

Each gap is indicated by an additional bar in front of the vehicle icon in the Message centre. After the ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap 3) will be automatically selected ready for ACC operation.

OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



Whenever the driver is overriding the ACC system by pressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

The set speed and gap can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal while cruising at a constant speed or in Follow mode. If the vehicle is in Follow mode when the ACC is overridden, the Follow mode warning lamp will go out and **CRUISE OVERRIDE** will be displayed in the Message centre. When the accelerator is released, the ACC function will operate again and the vehicle's speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if Follow mode is active.

QUEUE ASSIST

Queue assist is an enhancement of the ACC system and, when active, will follow a vehicle ahead to a standstill. It is intended for use in lines of traffic on major roads, where minimal steering is required.

If a vehicle ahead slows to a halt, Queue assist will bring the vehicle to a stop and hold it stationary.

While the vehicle is held stationary, Queue assist will request the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to apply if:

- The driver cancels Queue assist.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 3 minutes.
- Driver intention to exit the vehicle is detected.
- A malfunction is detected.

As the vehicle ahead moves away, a brief press on the accelerator will resume ACC operation.

At very low speeds, Queue assist may stop for stationary objects, e.g., when the vehicle ahead changes lane to reveal a stationary object. The vehicle's radar cannot always distinguish between a stationary vehicle and a fixed object like a road sign, drain cover, or temporary barrier. This may cause unexpected braking or cancellation and the driver should intervene, if appropriate.

ACC AUTO OFF

ACC will disengage, but not clear the memory when:

- The **CANCEL** button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
- Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.
- The difference between the vehicle's current speed and the set speed is too great.
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period, i.e., more than 5 minutes. See **130**,

OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE.

- The maximum vehicle speed is reached.
- The maximum engine revolution speed is reached: 5 000 rpm for a diesel engine and 7 000 rpm for a petrol engine.

ACC will disengage, and clear the memory when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the ACC system.

RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

By pressing the **RES** button, after ACC has been cancelled (e.g., after braking), ACC will become active again, provided that the set speed memory has not been erased. The original set speed will be resumed (unless a vehicle ahead causes Follow mode to become active) and the set speed will be displayed in the Message centre. Queue assist may be resumed above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: When the set speed is resumed, the rate of acceleration is influenced by the previously set Follow mode gap. A closer set gap will promote greater acceleration.

Note: When resuming a set speed while in a curve, acceleration is reduced. A more severe curve will reduce acceleration further. Remember that ACC and Queue assist are primarily for use when minimal steering is required.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ACC

During some situations, ACC may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible alarm will sound, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** in the Message centre, if ACC detects:

- A failure has occurred while the system is active.
- That using maximum ACC braking only is not sufficient.

Note: ACC only operates when the gear selector is in Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**).

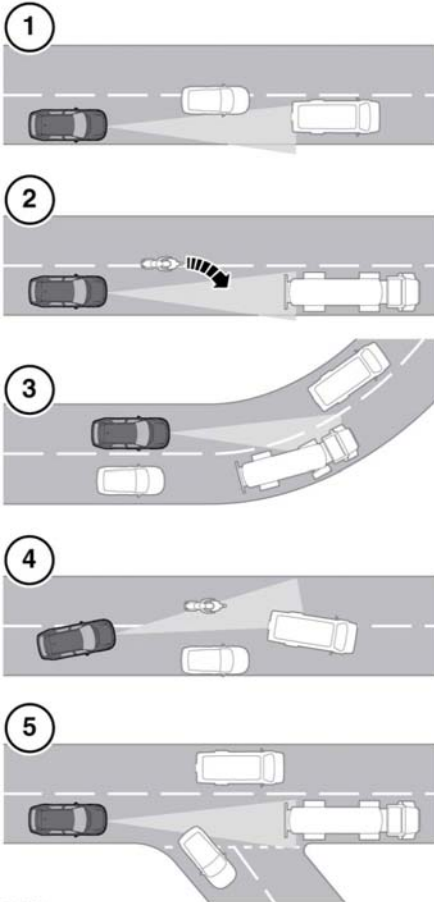
Note: When ACC is engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal ACC operation.

Note: When braking is applied by the ACC system, the vehicle's brake lamps will illuminate.

Adaptive cruise control

Note: When Intelligent stop/start is fitted, it may operate during a Queue assist stop. Press the accelerator pedal for longer than normal to restart the engine and move off.

DETECTION BEAM ISSUES



E142911

Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.

2. When a vehicle edges into your lane. The vehicle will only be detected once it has moved fully into your lane.
3. When going into and coming out of a bend.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of your lane. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these situations, ACC may operate unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene, if necessary.

ACC MALFUNCTION

If a fault occurs while ACC or Follow mode is operational, ACC will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly in the Message centre and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**.

If a fault with ACC, or any related system occurs at any other time, the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE** will be displayed. It will not be possible to activate ACC in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice on the radar sensor or cover may inhibit ACC operation. Fitting of a vehicle front protector or metallised badges may also affect ACC operation.

If this occurs in ACC/Follow mode, the audible alarm sounds and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly. The message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** will then be displayed.

Note: The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. If the obstruction is present when ACC is inactive (e.g., on initial starting or with ACC switched off), the message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** will be displayed.

Tyres, other than those recommended for this vehicle, may have different circumferences. This can affect the correct operation of ACC.

FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION



The Forward alert system may not react to slow moving vehicles.



Forward alert uses the same radar sensor as the ACC system. The same performance limitations apply. See 128, **ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW**.

Forward alert can be enabled/disabled via the Instrument panel menus, **Driving Features** and **Forward Alert**. See 47, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The warning lamp in the Instrument panel illuminates when Forward alert is enabled. See 55, **FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.

Forward alert provides limited detection and warning of objects close ahead while the vehicle is moving forwards. If a vehicle or object ahead is within the user defined sensitivity area, a warning tone will sound and the **FORWARD ALERT** message will be displayed in the Message centre. Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) will be activated. See 111, **EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

The driver must take appropriate action immediately.

Sensitivity of the function can only be adjusted when ACC is disengaged. Adjust, as follows:

- Using the steering wheel ACC buttons, press the gap decrease button to display the current setting in the Message centre and then press again to decrease the sensitivity of the alert.
- Press the gap increase button to display the current setting in the Message centre and then press again to increase the sensitivity of the alert.

FWD ALERT <----> is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: The Forward alert set gap is retained when the ignition is switched off.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST



The Advanced emergency brake assist system may not react to slow moving vehicles and will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.



Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large (e.g., to avoid a collision).



The system utilises the same radar sensor as ACC and Forward alert - the same limitations of performance apply.

When ACC is fitted, Advanced emergency brake assist is available at speeds above approximately 7 km/h (5 mph) and will function, even if Forward alert and ACC are switched off. It improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.

Adaptive cruise control

If the risk of collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, Advanced emergency brake assist is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently, in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See **111, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

***Note:** Braking performance will only be improved if the driver applies the brakes.*

If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without Advanced emergency brake assistance. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the fault rectified.

INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING



The Intelligent emergency brake (IEB) system may not react to slow moving vehicles.



The system will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles that are not travelling in the same direction as your vehicle.



Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large (e.g., to avoid a collision).



IEB uses the same radar sensor as ACC and Forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply. See **128, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.**

When ACC is fitted, The IEB feature will be available at all speeds and will function even if ACC and Forward alert are switched off. The purpose of the IEB feature is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable.

If an imminent risk of collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, the IEB feature will apply the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** is displayed in the Message centre and the system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

***Note:** The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the current road surface.*

If the radar sensor is blocked, by snow or heavy rain for example, or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

DRIVING MODES OPERATION



Use the buttons, located on the centre console (see **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**), to move through the different Driving modes. The currently selected Driving mode's LED indicator lamp will illuminate and a confirmation message will also be displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Changing between Driving modes will alter various vehicle settings, for example, engine revs may alter on selection of a different Driving mode, while at a constant accelerator pedal position, steering system feel may also become heavier or lighter. These changes are not dramatic but will be noticeable.*

DYNAMIC



The Dynamic driving mode coordinates the vehicle's control systems to help deliver a high performance driving experience, enabling the vehicle's full potential to be exploited.

The vehicle's responses are aimed at involving the driver in a more focused and purposeful driving experience.

Note: *Dynamic driving mode will remain selected for approximately 6 hours after the ignition is switched off, after which point it will need to be selected again, if required.*

Note: *During manual gear selection, see **106, MANUAL GEAR SELECTION**, with Dynamic driving mode selected and the transmission in Sport (**S**), the transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. The transmission will not change up automatically, even when the engine's (revolutions per minute (rpm)) speed limit is reached. The gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly, in the Message centre, at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **54, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.*

NORMAL



When the Normal driving mode is selected, all of the vehicle's systems will return to their normal settings.

Normal driving mode should be selected once the need for any other driving mode selection has passed.

ECO



The **ECO** driving mode coordinates the vehicle's control systems to help deliver a more conservative driving performance, to help achieve better fuel economy and lower exhaust emissions.

While **ECO** driving mode is selected, the system's status will be displayed in the Message centre. See **46, INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

Selecting **ECO** driving mode will alter some of the:

- Vehicle settings:
 - Automatic transmission gear changes.
 - Accelerator pedal response.
- Heating and ventilation settings:
 - Heated seats will be switched off. See **81, HEATED SEATS**.

Driving modes

- Climate Seats will be switched off. See **81, CLIMATE SEATS**.
- **Climate settings** menu (dependent on previous selections). See **80, CLIMATE SETTINGS**. **Auto heated screens** will be turned off. **Auto power** will be altered from **High** or **Medium** and set to **Low**.

Note: *If required, the driver can override these changes by normal operation of each feature or menu setting.*

Note: *When an alternative driving mode is selected, the heating and ventilation feature/menu settings will maintain any recent changes, or will return to the previous settings, if no recent changes were made.*

The Eco data system is another vehicle feature, designed to help achieve better fuel economy by providing current driving style data and ECO driving tips. The **Eco data** menu can be accessed via the **Extra features** menu in the Touch screen. See **76, TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

Note: *The Eco data system will only begin recording data after the vehicle has travelled at least 1 km (0.6 miles).*

Note: *The Eco data system only monitors driver inputs. Any automatic inputs from the vehicle, for example, accelerator pedal and brake pedal force applied by the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system will not be measured. Data not being measured and recorded will be greyed-out in the Message centre.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173307

WINTER



The Winter driving mode enhances vehicle stability in low grip conditions.

This helps the vehicle to perform in a more gentle and controlled manner, trying to avoid skidding; allowing more confident progress under adverse conditions.

Note: *Winter driving mode will remain selected indefinitely, even after the ignition is switched off. Winter driving mode must be deselected, if no longer required.*

Winter tyres and all season tyres will also help to enhance the vehicle's stability in adverse weather conditions. See **226, USING WINTER TYRES**.

PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM OVERVIEW

The Progress control system will help to enhance the vehicle's traction at low speeds, in either a forward or a reverse direction, for example, pulling away from standstill, ascending or descending a surface incline, and low speed driving in adverse road conditions and on unstable/slippery driving surfaces, such as, ice, snow, grass, gravel, sand, mud, etc.

Note: This Jaguar Land Rover feature is also known as All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) or All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).

USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM



The Progress control button is located on the centre console. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be completely closed to enable the feature.

Press and release the button, to enable the Progress control system. The button's LED lamp will illuminate, and a warning lamp will also illuminate in the Instrument panel to confirm. See **54, PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM (AMBER)**.

Press and release the Progress control button again to disable the system. The button's LED lamp and the Progress control warning lamp will extinguish to confirm.

When the ignition is switched off, the Progress control system will be disabled.

When enabled while the vehicle is stationary, the Progress control system will default to a descent control mode. The descent control mode should be used in the event that the vehicle is to make a descent:

- Select the required position for the rotary gear selector.
Note: Any gear selector position can used, including Neutral (N).
- Release the EPB or the brake pedal, to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress, up to the minimum feature speed of 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph).
- Progress control will hold this speed, until the system detects the use of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, or the Cruise control **SET+** button on the steering wheel.

Note: Descent control mode will be resumed after using the accelerator pedal, or the brake pedal.

Note: Progress control will change to a full function mode, when it detects the use of the Cruise control **SET+** button on the steering wheel. See **138, PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Full function mode should be used for all other manoeuvres that require the use of Progress control, for example, while making an ascent, or pulling away on level ground, etc.

Note: Full function mode will not operate with the gear selector in the Neutral (N) position. In this event a message will appear in the Message centre.

Note: Press and hold the brake pedal, while using the **SET+** button when the vehicle is stationary.

The Progress control system can also be enabled by pressing and releasing the button while the vehicle is moving, without the need to stop or apply the brake pedal. The current vehicle speed will then be used as the set speed and the Progress control system will then default to the full function mode.

Progress control system


Note: If the vehicle's brakes are firmly applied, during the operation of Progress control, the system will exit the full function mode and will then enter into the descent control mode.

Note: Light and gentle application of the brake pedal, during the operation of Progress control, will lower the target vehicle speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, the Progress control system will maintain the speed at which the brake pedal was released.

Note: The driver can override the Progress control system at any time, with the use of the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal.

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (18.6 mph), the Progress control system will be suspended, and the system will then go into a standby mode, until the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18.6 mph).


Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the Progress control system will be disabled. If required, the system will have to be switched on again, via the Progress control button.

 The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times.

When the Progress control system is enabled and the brake pedal is fully released, the system will help to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to;

- Pull-away from stationary in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
- Perform low speed manoeuvring in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected, low target (set) speed, from 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph) up to 30 km/h (18.6 mph).

In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, the warning **ASPC TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE** will be displayed in the Message centre. The Progress control system will then fade-out and become temporarily inactive. Once the brakes have returned to the normal operating temperatures, the message will extinguish and the Progress control system will resume normal operation, if still required.

 Do not attempt a steep descent if the Progress control system is not enabled or the warning message is displayed.

PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM SETTINGS

When the Progress control system is enabled, the desired target (set) speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted via the Cruise control buttons, mounted on the right side of the steering wheel. See **127, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.

- **SET+:** While the vehicle is moving, press to enable the Progress control system, to recognise that the desired target vehicle speed is to be set and adjusted. Press repeatedly (or press and hold) to increase the target speed, up to a maximum speed of 30 km/h (18.6 mph). Alternatively, while making progress, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set speed.

Note: If the vehicle is at a standstill, then press and hold the brake pedal while using the **SET+** button.

Note: Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal will temporarily override the current set target speed. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, the Progress control system will revert back to the previously selected target speed.

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed will either be displayed as a marker on the speedometer, or displayed in the Message centre.*

- (-): Press repeatedly (or press and hold) to decrease the desired target vehicle speed, down to a minimum speed of 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph).

Note: *Light and gentle application of the brake pedal will also lower the target vehicle speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, the Progress control system will maintain the speed at which the brake pedal was released. If the brake pedal is pressed when the Progress control system is active, then a slight pulsation movement might be felt through the brake pedal.*

- **CAN:** Press to put the Progress control system into descent control mode. See **137, USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM.**
 - **RES:** Press to resume the set speed, if the target vehicle speed has been lowered by gently applying the brake pedal.
- ⓘ **RES** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

When the vehicle is travelling at speeds between 30km/h (18.6 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), the Progress control operation will be suspended and the system will enter into a standby mode, then the Progress control warning lamp will also flash. The Progress control system will resume operation if the vehicle's speed then becomes less than 30 km/h (18.6 mph), but does not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). If the vehicle's speed does exceed 80 km/h (50 mph), then the Progress control system will be disabled and the warning lamp will extinguish. If required, the system will have to be switched on again.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173306

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION



The Traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Traffic sign recognition system.

The Traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror, which detects speed signs, no overtaking signs and variable overhead speed signs, and displays symbols of the detected signs in the Message centre. Traffic signs with extra information (for example, reduced speed limits for wet road conditions) will also be detected and compared with the vehicle's systems (for example, rain sensor, wipers, etc.), and may also be displayed in the Message centre. Speed limit information from the Navigation system will be displayed for roads with no signage.

Note: *If Navigation is not available, or the Off-road navigation is selected, the Traffic sign recognition system will use the camera only.*

Note: *Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

The Traffic sign recognition system can be switched on/off via the **Driving Features, Traffic sign** and **Sign recognition** Instrument panel menus. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The system will operate up to a maximum speed of 250 km/h (155 mph).

The 3 basic functions of the Traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

- **Speed limit detection:** A corresponding sign will be displayed in the Message centre.
- **Speed alert:** When the vehicle's speed is greater than (or equal to) the detected speed limit, a flashing red ring, around the displayed speed limit sign, will be displayed in the Message centre. Speed alert can be switched on/off or adjusted, via the **Driving Features, Traffic sign** and **Speed alert** Instrument panel menus.

The speed alert settings can be adjusted to display:

- When the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.
- When the vehicle's speed is 10 km/h or 5 mph above the detected speed limit. Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in km/h or mph.
- When the vehicle's speed is 20 km/h or 10 mph above the detected speed limit. Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in km/h or mph.
- No overtaking zone. When a no overtaking sign has been detected, the system will also display a corresponding sign in the Message centre.

Note: *The Traffic sign recognition system will not detect road markings or situations with no signage, for example, railway crossings, etc.*

Traffic sign recognition limitations

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

- Travelling in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Concealed or covered signage.

- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.
- The windscreen area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, misted over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
- Navigation information is incorrect.
- Travelling in an area not covered by the Navigation system.
- Non-conforming road signs.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING



The Lane departure warning system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Lane departure warning system.

Note: In order for the Lane departure warning system to operate correctly, make sure that the windscreen is kept clean, and the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers, or any other objects.



The Lane departure warning system can be switched on/off by pressing the button located on the driver's side of the fascia. See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

When enabled, the Lane departure (green) warning lamp will illuminate in the Message centre to confirm. See **54, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)**.

The status of the system is also shown by the changes of the lane icon colours and the vehicle position icon within the Lane departure warning (red) lamp. See **52, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)**.

Note: When the ignition is switched on, the Lane departure warning system will remain at the previous on or off status and also retain the previous settings.

The Lane departure warning system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror.

Note: Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

If the vehicle crosses either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate indicator, then the Lane departure warning system will alert the driver via the methods below:

- Illumination of the Lane departure (red) warning lamp.
- Steering wheel vibration (haptic feedback).
- Graphical displays in the Message centre.

Note: The Lane departure warning system will only provide warnings to the driver. It will not assist in changing the direction of the vehicle, or operate any of the vehicle's systems.

Note: The Lane departure warning system will not detect unmarked edges of the road.

The sensitivity of the Lane departure warning system can be adjusted between **High sensitivity** or **Normal sensitivity**, via the **Driving Features** and **Lane Departure Instrument panel** menus.

When set at **Normal sensitivity**, the Lane departure warning system will suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected, as listed below:

- Operation of the accelerator pedal.
- Significant movement of the steering wheel.
- Operation of the brakes.
- Activation of the appropriate indicator.

Driving aids

When set at **High sensitivity**, the Lane departure warning system will not suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected (unless the appropriate indicator is activated).

If the Lane departure warning system detects a fault or is not available, then the General warning/information message (amber) will be displayed in the Message centre. See **51, GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

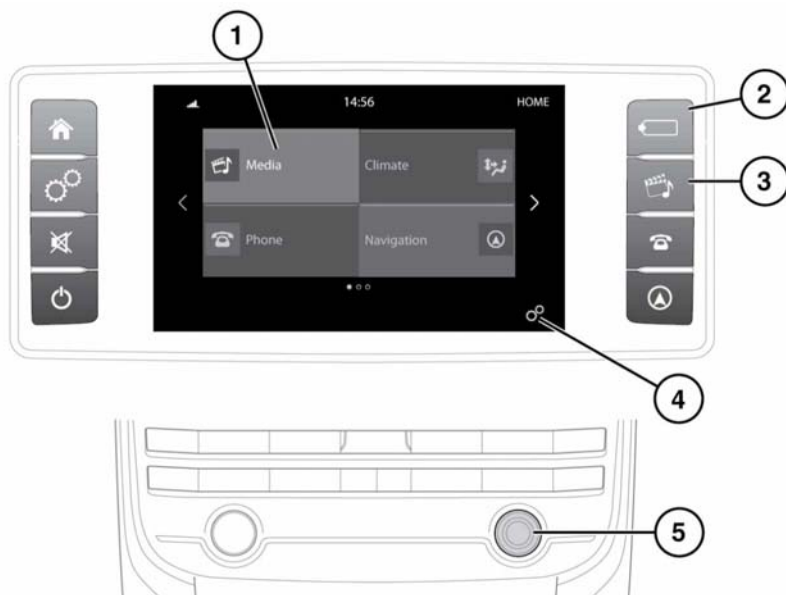
Lane departure warning limitations

- When set at **High sensitivity**, the vehicle's speed needs to be between 50 km/h and 180 km/h or 30 mph and 112 mph .
Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
- When set at **Normal sensitivity**, the vehicle's speed needs to be between 60 km/h and 180 km/h or 40 mph and 112 mph. Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in km/h or mph.
- The lane in use must be wider than 2.5 m (8.2 ft).
- No warning given if the correct indicator is active.
- Not active in off-road conditions.

The performance of the Lane departure warning system may also be affected in the following conditions:

- Adverse driving conditions, for example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Worn, damaged, or temporary lane markings, for example, road works, etc.
- Tight deviations of the roads and their gradients.
- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.
- Driving very close to another vehicle.

MEDIA CONTROLS



E168145

⚠ In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

⚠ Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. Press to select the **RADIO** menu screen or the media screen for the last selected media source.
2. Media source: Press to select the media source list. Touch the required media source from the list:
 - **FM Radio.**
 - **AM Radio.**
 - **DAB Radio.**
 - **Bluetooth*.**
 - **USB*.**

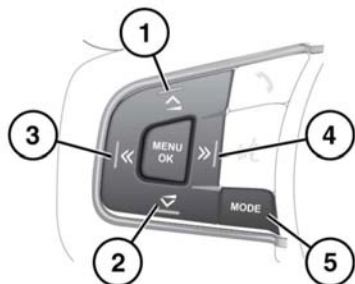
- **iPod*.**
- **AUX.**

Note: *Only a connected portable media or **Bluetooth®** device will appear on the Source list. Therefore, before selecting a device, the source media device has to be connected or paired (via Bluetooth) to the vehicle.

3. Press to select the **Media** system.
4. Touch to select the **General settings** menu screen. For the audio settings, select **Audio**. See **144, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. Press to switch the Media system on/off; rotate to adjust the volume level.

Note: The Media system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the Media system on again, if required.

AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



E168147

1. Press to increase the volume for any source.
2. Press to decrease the volume for any source.
3. Skip backwards: Press to skip back to the beginning of the current track being played.
4. Skip forwards: Press to skip forwards to the start of the next track.
5. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all of the available, or connected, media sources.

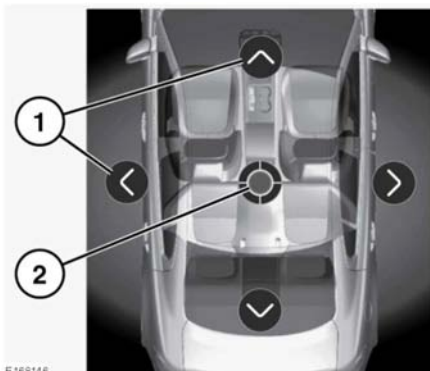
AUDIO SETTINGS

To view the **Audio** settings menu, select **Audio** from the **General settings** menu.

Audio settings contains the following options:

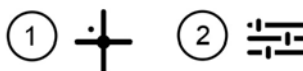
- **Traffic Announcement**: Switch on/off.
- **Sound**: Select to view the following options:
 - **Balance/Fade**.
 - **Bass/Mid/Treble**.
 - **Speed dependent volume**.
- **Radio**: These setting options are dependent on the radio source selected. See **145, AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS** or **147, DAB RADIO CONTROLS**.

To adjust the balance and fade settings, touch **Balance/Fade**.



E168146

Touch the arrow soft keys (1) to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point (2) and 'drag' it to the required position. To return to the default setting, touch the sound focal point (2).

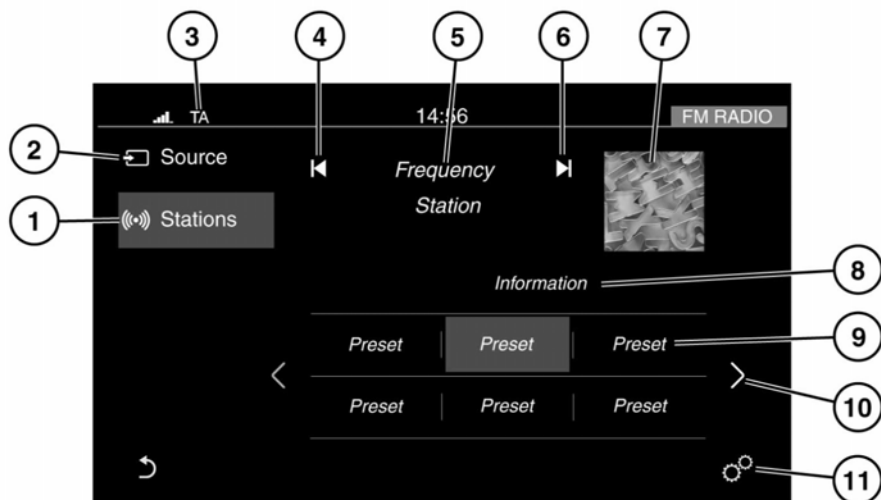


E164018

1. Touch the symbol to move from the **Bass/Mid/Treble** screen to the **Balance/Fade** screen.
2. Touch the symbol to move from the **Balance/Fade** screen to the **Bass/Mid/Treble** screen.

AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS

FM Radio Presets screen

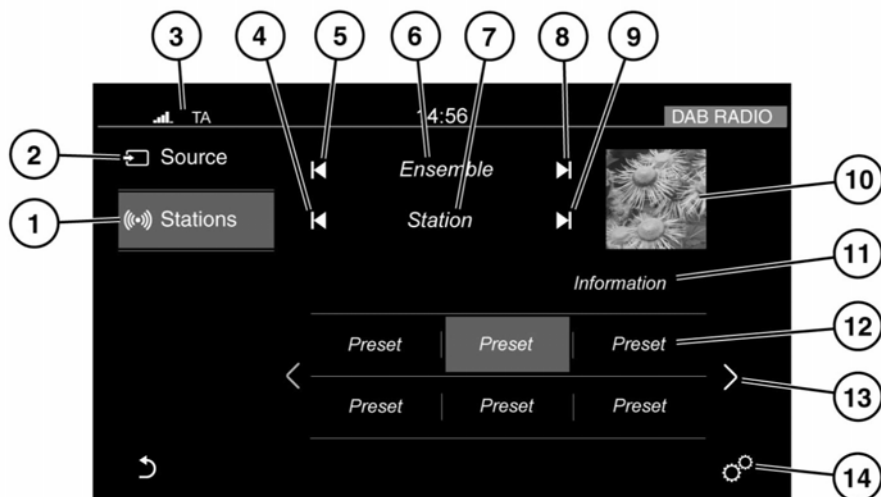


E171498

- Stations:** Touch to select the list of available stations for the chosen radio source.
 - Source:** Touch to select the media source list. See **143, MEDIA CONTROLS**.
 - Status icons:** Showing the connected phone's battery level and network signal strength. The Traffic Announcement (**TA**) icon will also be displayed, if TA is currently switched on. See **144, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
 - Seek down:** Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
Note: In some markets, additional buttons are available to enable manual tuning.
 - The selected frequency and station name.
 - Seek up:** Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio station. The seek buttons on the steering wheel can also be used to change to the next or the previous frequency.
- Note:* In some markets, additional buttons are available to enable manual tuning.
- Waveband image (if available).
 - Information from the selected station.
 - Station presets:
 - Touch to tune to the station stored on that preset.
 - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset.
 - Touch to scroll through the preset stations.
 - Touch to select the **General settings** menu. Select **Media** and then **Radio**, where the following features can be activated/deactivated:
 - Manual tune.**
 - Radiotext** (FM only).
 - Alternative Frequency (AF)** (FM only).
 - Regionalization** (FM only).

***Note:** Settings options may vary, depending on the market.*

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



E171499

1. **Stations:** Touch to select the list of available stations for the selected waveband.
 2. **Source:** Touch to select the media source list.
 3. **Status icons:** Showing the connected phone's battery level and network signal strength. The Traffic Announcement (**TA**) icon will also be displayed, if TA is currently switched on. See **144, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
 4. **Seek down:** Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
 5. **Seek down:** Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio ensemble.
 6. The selected radio ensemble name.
 7. The selected radio station name.
 8. **Seek up:** Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio ensemble.
 9. **Seek up:** Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
- The seek buttons on the steering wheel can also be used to change to the next or the previous frequency.
10. Waveband image (if available).
 11. Information from the selected station.
 12. **Station presets:**
 - Touch and release to tune to the radio station stored on that preset.
 - Touch and hold to store the current radio station on that preset.
 13. Touch to scroll through the preset stations.
 14. Touch to select the **General settings** menu. Select **Media** and then **Radio**, where the following features can be activated/deactivated:
 - **Radiotext.**
 - **DAB L-Band.**

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173295

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the cubby box. See **85, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**. Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g., a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone, and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

Note: Media playing devices, connected via the **AUX** socket, will not have Touch screen control.

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the Touch screen to operate and search for the device.

- ⚠ Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note: The Audio system will play MP3, WMA, and AAC files.

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

Note: iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

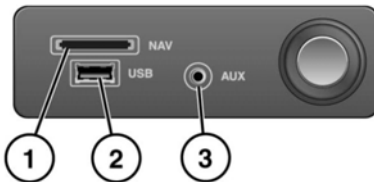
Note: Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to **USB Removable Device** or **Mass Storage Device** mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices, please refer to the Jaguar website at: www.jaguar.com.

The **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the device's software version and the battery's condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

- ⚠ Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the Audio system. Make sure the device is suitable and complies with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's Audio system or the auxiliary device.



E168153

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the cubby box. See **85, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.

1. SD card slot for Navigation and Voice only.

Note: The Media system will not play music or display saved images from an SD card.

2. USB socket.
3. 3.5 mm AUX socket.



Do not connect non-media playing devices into the USB port.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

Note: A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the Audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Note: In some cases, if an iPhone is connected via a USB cable for music and also to a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device for other phone functions, the audio will stream through only the last connected port. For example, if a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is the last connection made to the iPhone and the iPod lead is connected, no audio will be heard through the speakers via the iPod lead. Track title and time information will still be shown on the display. Audio output from the speakers will only be obtained if the user chooses **audio mode** on the **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device. To address this issue, disconnect and reconnect your device's USB cable or open the iPod application on the iPhone, select the **Bluetooth** icon and select **Dock Connector** on the pop-up.

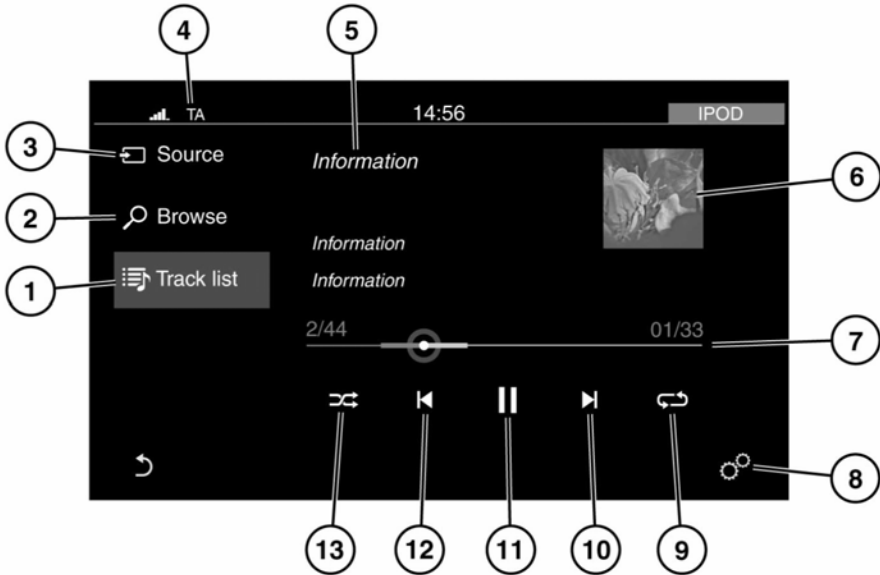
When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

Note: Options, such as **Repeat** and **Mix**, relate to the device currently playing; they will not apply to any subsequent device.

The 3.5 mm AUX socket allows extra equipment (e.g., personal stereos MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the Audio system.

Note: iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E171514

The following portable devices can be used on the Media system: **iPod**, **USB**, **AUX**, and **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

1. **Track list:** Touch to select the list of tracks from the connected device.
2. **Browse:** Touch to select the menu screen for the required music or audio source subject list for the connected device: **Playlists**, **Artists**, **Albums**, **Songs**, etc.
3. **Source:** Touch to select the media source menu screen.

***Note:** The media source has to be connected to the vehicle before it will appear in the media source list.*

4. **Status icons:** Showing the connected phone's battery level and network signal strength. The Traffic Announcement (**TA**) icon will also be displayed, if TA is currently switched on. See **144, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. **Information** relating to the music or audio being played.
6. **Image display:** If available, the album art for the current track being played will be displayed. The image will also appear on the **Media** soft key on the **HOME** menu. See **76, TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.
7. **Progress bar:** Drag the spot or touch the line to move forwards or backwards through the track.
8. Touch to select the **General settings** menu screen. **Audio** or **Bluetooth** settings can then be selected.

9. Continuous play: Touch to play the current track continuously.
10. Skip/scan forwards: Touch to skip forwards to the start of the next track, or, touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes when the soft key is released.
11. Pause/play: Touch to pause playback; touch again to resume playback.
12. Skip/scan backwards: Touch to skip back to the beginning of the current track being played, or touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes when the soft key is released.
13. Shuffle: Touch to play random tracks from the current MP3 folder, USB folder, or iPod playlist.

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or an approved iPod, you can control playback using the Touch screen controls.

If you are using a **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, you can control playback using the Touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.



Jaguar does not recommend the use of a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in-car use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES



Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

You can connect multiple devices simultaneously to the portable media interface and switch between them via the **Source** selector. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth**, or **AUX**, to switch between modes.

The device docked first will remain the active device until you choose to change.

If, after changing to the newly-docked device, you change back to the first device, play will resume at the point you left it (USB and iPod only).

Note: You cannot use a USB hub to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the iPod and USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH DEVICE

For information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** device, see **155, PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE**.

For further information on **Bluetooth**® wireless technology, see **155, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

LICENSING



E135227



E132539

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



E132541



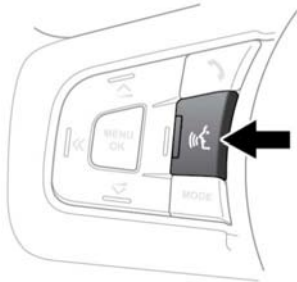
E132542

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

USING VOICE CONTROL

Note: The Voice control system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, Jaguar cannot guarantee the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice control system for compatibility with a particular accent group.

Note: The Voice control system will not operate, unless the SD card supplied with the vehicle is inserted correctly into the SD card slot. See **148, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE.**



E168148

To start a voice session, briefly press the Voice control system button on the steering wheel. The **Teleprompter list** appears on the Touch screen. To cancel a voice session, press and hold the Voice control system button.

Note: Briefly press the Voice control system button during a voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.

Teleprompter list: This list provides feedback and available commands for each stage of the voice session.



Voice symbol: This indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before saying a command.

Note: As the commands are listed before the system is ready to listen, it is important to wait for the voice symbol to appear, before saying a command.

Say **Cancel** (at any time) to cancel the current voice command.

Note: All feature items listed (that can be activated by the Voice control system) can also be activated by touching the relevant command list item on the Touch screen.

A list of the available features can be displayed by saying the voice command, **More Commands**. Alternatively, saying **All Commands** (or selection via the Touch Screen), will enable visual and audible instructions to be given in a default sequential order, starting with **Navigation Commands** and then followed by other available features.

The Voice control system will work with the user to display the feature lists individually. Say (or select) **Navigation Commands** or **Phone Commands**, then only the relevant commands for that feature will be read out and displayed.

NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

To request the display of Points Of Interest (POIs), say **Find next** with one of the following POI categories:

- **Find next (Petrol station/Petrol).**
- **Find next (Parking/Car park).**
- **Find next (Jaguar [Dealer]).**
- **Find next (Hospital).**
- **Find next (Golf course).**
- **Find next (Tourist information office).**
- **Find next (Restaurant).**
- **Find next (Shopping centre).**
- **Find next (Hotel/Motel).**
- **Find next (say a Brand name) of the POI category.**

Note: The word **Find next** must be followed immediately by a category.

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION

Bluetooth® is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Jaguar **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth®** Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) and Message Access Profile (MAP).

Note: *HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, your **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. This is done using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle (preferred method) or from the Touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

For a list of compatible phones, please access the Jaguar website at www.jaguar.com. In the **Owners** section, refer to **Bluetooth Connectivity**.

Note: *The **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE

A paired phone or device can be connected for different uses; phone or music. Pairing is normally only required once.

When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle automatically tries to re-connect to a previously paired **Bluetooth®** phone or device, if it is within range of the vehicle.

If not automatically connected, or to connect a new phone or device, follow one of the following pairing methods:

Pairing using the phone or device (preferred method):

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. Select **General settings**, then **Bluetooth**.
3. From the list, select **Make system discoverable**.
4. Switch on your phone or device's **Bluetooth** wireless technology device connection. Using your phone or device, search for and select your vehicle's **Bluetooth** connection (see your phone or device's operating instructions for more information).
5. A Passkey number appears on the phone or device. If this number matches the number on the Touch screen, touch **Yes**, or press **Pair** on the phone or device.

Pairing using the Touch screen

1. Switch on your phone or device's **Bluetooth** wireless technology device connection. Make sure that your phone or device is in **Bluetooth** wireless technology device discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your phone or device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
3. Select **General settings**.
4. From the displayed list, select **Bluetooth**.
5. The system searches for a phone or device and, if found, the phone or device displays on the screen. If the phone or device is not found, **NO DEVICES FOUND** displays.
Note: The phone/device list can store up to 4 entries.
6. A Passkey number appears on the phone or device. If this number matches the number on the Touch screen, touch **Yes**.
7. Once a phone or device is paired, it appears on the connected device's list and on the **PHONE** screen and it appears in the **Bluetooth, List of paired devices** section.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173293

CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE OR DEVICE

Up to 4 mobile phones or devices can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only 2 can be connected and ready for use as a phone or device at any one time (one for phone and one for media).

To connect a different paired phone to the vehicle:

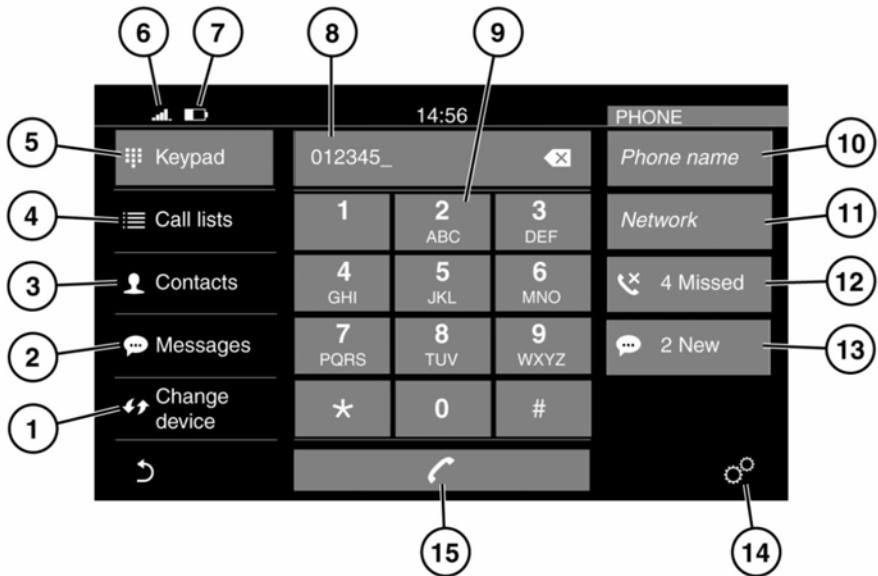
1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. Touch the **Phone** soft key or the phone hard key.
3. From the **PHONE** menu screen, select **Change device**. See **157, TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
4. A menu will appear. Select a paired device from the list.

DELETING A PAIRED PHONE OR DEVICE

To delete a phone or device from the system:

1. In **General settings**, select **Bluetooth**.
2. From the list, select **List of paired devices**.
3. Select the phone or device to be deleted.
4. From the list, select **Delete pairing** to delete the phone or device from the system.

TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



E164133

For information on connecting a **Bluetooth®** phone or device, see **155, PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE**.

For information on mobile phone compatibility, see **155, TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Note: Some telephone system features will not operate unless the SD card supplied with the vehicle is inserted correctly into the SD card slot. See **148, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

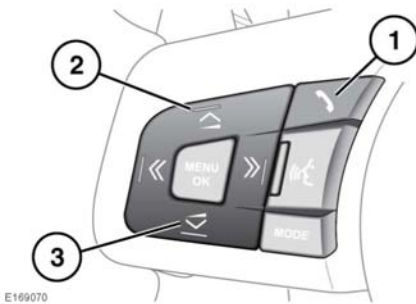
- 1. Change device:** Touch to search for a new, or change to another paired phone or device.
- 2. Messages:** Touch to select the Messages inbox, or to create a new message.

- 3. Contacts:** Touch to select the connected phone's Contacts list. Scroll through the list or use the alphas (A-C, D-F, etc.) to find the contact more quickly.
- 4. Call lists:** Touch to access the connected phone's Call lists.
- 5. Keypad:** Touch to display the keypad.
- 6.** Network signal strength icon.
- 7.** The connected phone's battery level icon.
- 8.** Status display: Displays the number dialed from the keypad, or the contact selected.
- 9.** Keypad.
- 10.** Name of the connected phone.
- 11.** The connected phone's network provider.
- 12.** Missed calls: Indicates any missed calls.
- 13.** New messages: Indicates that a new message/s has been received.

Telephone



- Settings: Touch to display the **General settings** menu. Select **Phone**, for the following options:
 - Announce incoming messages:** Switch on/off.
 - Refresh phonebook:** Select to refresh the connected phone's phonebook.
- Touch to make or answer a call (green button), or touch to end a call (red button).

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



- Press to make a call, or answer an incoming call. Press and hold to end a call.
- Press to increase the volume when in a call.
- Press to decrease the volume when in a call.

TELEPHONE SAFETY

-  **Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals, or metal dust.**
-  **Always stow your mobile phone securely.**



The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 cm (6 in) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

CALL VOLUME

The phone call's volume is operated by the Media system's volume control.

If the Media system is in use when a phone call is active, the Media system source is muted for the duration of the call.

RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

When a pop-up screen appears with an incoming text message, touch the **Show** button.

A screen will appear with the following options:

- Reply:** Touch to select a screen where a reply can be entered and sent.
Note: This option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.
- Template:** Touch to select a list of replies (e.g., **Yes, No, Thank you!, I'll be arriving a little late**, etc.) Select the required reply.
- Read Out:** Touch for the message to be read out as an audio message.
Note: Availability is dependent on the vehicle specification.

INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle mobile technology, to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

Note: For further information, access the www.jaguar.com website. In the search box, type in, **getting started using incontrol**. Select the first link displayed.

InControl has 5 main features:

- InControl Protect.
- InControl Remote Premium.
- InControl Secure.
- InControl Wi-Fi.
- InControl Apps.

For InControl Protect, Remote Premium, and InControl Secure, an InControl account must be created. If your Dealer has not pre-registered your account, or if you are not the first owner of the vehicle, then you will need to visit: www.jaguarincontrol.com/owner to create an account. Once the InControl account has been created, follow the on-screen instructions to connect the InControl account to the vehicle and to activate the services on the vehicle.

Note: 100% mobile network connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.

Note: It is the account owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from their InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.

INCONTROL PROTECT

InControl Protect comprises the following:

- The InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App.
- A Jaguar Assistance Breakdown Call feature.
- A Jaguar SOS Emergency Call feature.

InControl Remote Essentials

The InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App has a number of different features, that are displayed on the following:

- A screen showing the status of the vehicle will display; the vehicle's current fuel level, fuel range, and odometer reading; and a vehicle locator display, to help find the last parked location of the vehicle. The current security status of the vehicle will also be shown. Any current vehicle warnings will also be displayed. Touch the warning on the screen for further information.
- The **Vehicle Security** screen will display the open/closed status of all the doors/windows and the current alarm setting.
- The **Journeys** screen will display the most recent journeys completed in the vehicle.

Note: This feature can be enabled/disabled via the InControl **Settings** screen.

Note: The stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or downloaded as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.

- The **Assistance** screen will display the vehicle's VIN and registration number. This screen will also allow for direct calls to be made to Jaguar Assistance (in the event of a breakdown) and the Tracking Call Centre (in the event of a vehicle theft).
- The **Settings** screen will allow the vehicle's security status and the journey recording to be switched on/off. It also allows access to your InControl account.

Jaguar Assistance Breakdown Call



Located in the overhead console.
See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button will be illuminated by a white LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to Jaguar Assistance. Also, the vehicle's details and the location will automatically be supplied to them.

When a call is initiated, the button will flash amber and will be constantly illuminated amber during the call.

Push the button cover back into place after use.

Jaguar SOS Emergency Call



Located in the overhead console.
See **288, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: The Jaguar SOS Emergency Call feature should only be used in the event of a severe accident, or in the event that personal safety or security is at risk.

Press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button will be illuminated by a red LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services. Also, the vehicle's details and the location will automatically be supplied to them.

When a call is initiated, the button will flash amber. The button will be constantly illuminated amber during a call.

Push the button cover back into place after use.

Note: In the event that a severe crash is detected, the Jaguar SOS Emergency Call will be automatically triggered.

Note: If the vehicle is travelling in a different country, the Jaguar SOS Emergency Call will still connect, however, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent.

This feature has 2 backup batteries that will maintain full system operation, in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled.

Note: The backup batteries will be maintained as part of the vehicle's servicing schedule, as carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If a fault is detected with the Jaguar SOS Emergency Call system, then the **SOS Limited** message will be displayed in the Message centre. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



INCONTROL REMOTE PREMIUM

The InControl Remote Premium Smartphone App has a number of extra features, in addition to the InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App:

- A screen showing the status of the vehicle will display the **Beep & Flash** feature. Touch this icon to help locate the vehicle, by operating the vehicle's exterior lamps; a short audible horn alert will also sound.

Note: It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force, regarding the use of vehicle horns.

- The **Vehicle Security** screen will allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked. This screen will also display the vehicle's alarm status. e.g., set or not set.

Note: Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, then a pop-up screen will appear with an option to reset the alarm. The alarm may also be reset via the **Vehicle Security** screen.

Note: It remains the responsibility of the driver to know the location of the vehicle and to make sure that the vehicle is secured.

- The **Remote Climate** screen allows the engine to be started remotely (for vehicles with an automatic transmission), and run, for up to 30 minutes, to provide a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle.

Remote climate will not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked.
- A window, door, bonnet, or the luggage compartment is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error with any required vehicle system.
- A theft has been detected.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lamps are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (P).
- The brake pedal is pressed.

Note: Some markets may prohibit the use of a remote engine start. It remains the responsibility of the driver to know if this function can legally be used.

Note: This feature is also available for vehicles fitted with a Timed climate system. If the vehicle's configuration (e.g., transmission or engine variant) does not support a remote engine start, or if the vehicle originated in a market with legal restrictions on a remote engine start, then the Timed climate system may be used to support the cabin's pre-conditioning.

- **Wake Up Timer:** The InControl Remote system on the vehicle, will shut down if the vehicle is not driven for 4 days. This is to conserve battery power. If for example, you are on vacation, or away on a business trip, then you can use the **Wake Up Timer** on the Smart Phone App. This feature will wake up the InControl Remote system on the selected date. Any date within a 30 day period can be chosen.

Note: Note: The **Wake Up Timer** cannot be set once the InControl Remote system has shut down. Once the **Wake Up Timer** is set, the InControl Remote system will shut down on the second day after the car was last driven, to preserve battery power for wake up.

INCONTROL SECURE

InControl Secure provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without your consent, you will be contacted by the InControl Secure operating centre. Alternatively, use the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or the phone number on the InControl website, to contact the InControl Secure operating centre.

When the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, **Service Mode** must be enabled for InControl Secure. This can be done by using the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or via the InControl website. This will prevent automatic theft alerts being raised while the vehicle is being serviced.

If the vehicle is being transported, **Transport Mode** must be enabled for InControl Secure. This can be done by using the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or via the InControl website. This will prevent automatic theft alerts being raised while the vehicle is being transported.

Note: When set, Service or Transport Mode should be updated every 10 hours, or more frequently if required.

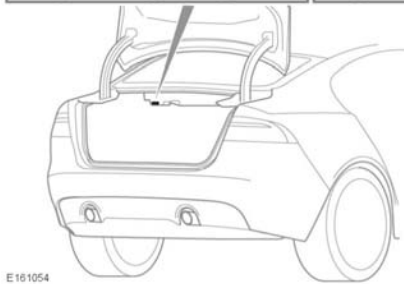
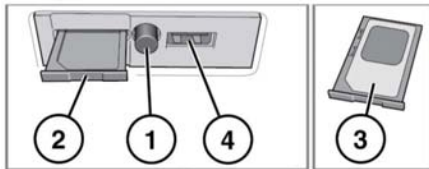
INCONTROL WI-FI

InControl Wi-Fi allows connection to the internet using a high speed 3G connection.

A SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card holder is located in the luggage compartment.

The SIM card reader utilizes a 'Mini-SIM' interface. If your SIM card is a different size, for example, 'Micro-SIM', an adaptor or replacement SIM card will be required.

Note: If your SIM card has previously been used in a mobile phone, or any other device, and a Personal Identification Number (PIN) has been set, remove the PIN before using the SIM card in the vehicle.



E161054

To install a SIM card, open the luggage compartment lid for access, then press the button (1) to release and remove the SIM card holder (2).

Insert the SIM card into the holder, as indicated (3).



Make sure the SIM card is located correctly in the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the SIM card or SIM card reader.

Refit the SIM card holder, as indicated (2). Gently push back to fully close.

Close the luggage compartment lid.

Note: The USB port (4) is for service use only.

Wi-Fi settings

InControl Wi-Fi can be switched on/off using the Touch screen. From the **Home menu** screen, navigate to the **Extra features** menu screen/s, then select **WiFi Hotspot**. See the Touch screen section of this handbook for more information.

The **WiFi Hotspot** screen will display the Wi-Fi network ID and password. It also allows you to adjust basic system settings. More advanced settings, including changing your security password and Access Point Name (APN) configuration, can be carried out by accessing the **Wi-Fi Hotspot Router** menu on your mobile device.

To access the **Wi-Fi Hotspot Router** menu:

- From the **WiFi Hotspot** screen, select **Help**.
- The Wi-Fi hotspot router address will be displayed on the Touch screen. Copy this address into your mobile device's internet browser.

The **Wi-Fi Hotspot Router** menu will now be displayed on your mobile device. Log in using the details displayed on the **Help** screen.

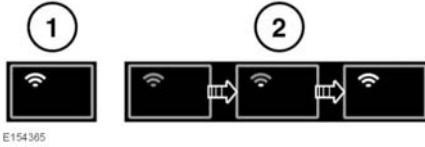
Wi-Fi icons



E154367

1. 3G mobile phone network connectivity.

2. 2G mobile phone network connectivity.
3. Connecting.
4. No mobile phone network connection.



1. Wi-Fi hotspot on.
2. Wi-Fi hotspot initialising.

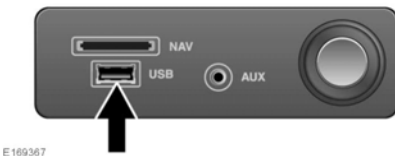
INCONTROL APPS

InControl Apps allows you to operate a number of smartphone Apps through the vehicle's Touch screen.

Before using InControl Apps, you will need to download the InControl Apps Smartphone App. For Apple's iPhone®, this can be downloaded from the Apple App StoreSM.

For Android phones, this can be downloaded from Google play.

Note: Not all smartphones are compatible with InControl Apps. Check the list of compatible smartphones and supported Apps in the InControl section of www.jaguar.com.



To initiate InControl Apps, connect your smartphone's USB cable to the vehicle's USB socket, located in the centre console cubby box. See **148, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

Once connected, any available Apps will appear on the vehicle's Touch screen. You can now open and operate those Apps using the Touch screen in the same way as your smartphone.

Download the InControl Remote Premium Smartphone App, and the InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App.

Note: The availability and functionality of the InControl Apps will depend on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.

Note: Smartphone Apps is not suitable for use while driving, for example, gaming Apps will not appear on the Touch screen while the vehicle is moving.

Note: To establish a connection to the vehicle, the smartphone must be connected to the USB socket and the Touch screen Home menu displayed.

Note: Apple and iPhone are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Navigation system

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the Touch screen and can be complemented by voice guidance, if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the SD card, to establish the true position of the vehicle.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The Touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens, and map displays.

 **Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.**

Note: *The Navigation system fitted to your vehicle does not support speed camera alerts.*

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The Navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the Navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels and roads, under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the Navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on the screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on, or beneath, elevated roads.

- 2 roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle has been transported to another destination.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

NAVIGATION SD CARD



E171145


The Navigation SD card reader is located in the front centre cubby box. See **85, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**. Make sure that the SD card is located correctly in the card reader before operating the Navigation system.

For updates to the Navigation system's maps, visit:

www.jaguar.com/map-updates/incontrol-touch, or contact a Jaguar Dealer.

Note: *If for any reason the SD card is ejected while the Navigation system is in operation, the Navigation system will not operate until the vehicle's ignition is switched off and the vehicle is restarted.*

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

 **In the interests of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.**



The Navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving. It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely, and be in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. It is also the driver's responsibility to determine the safety of the route suggested by the Navigation system. The Navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.



Do not allow the system to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents causing serious, injury or death.

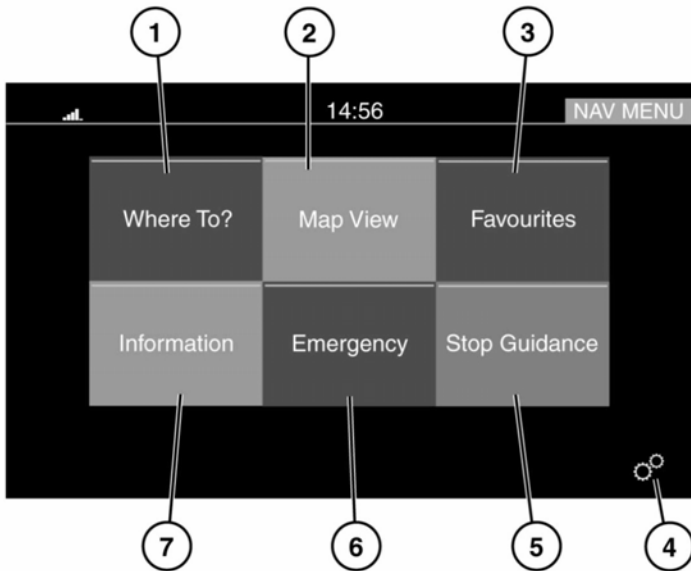
To access the Navigation system, press the Navigation button or touch the **Navigation** area on the **HOME** screen.

Note: *The Navigation system will remain active until the ignition is turned off and the driver's door is opened.*

This will show the current vehicle position. Touch the **Nav menu** soft key to display the **NAV MENU** screen.

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **Nav set-up** area. These settings are applied, whenever the Navigation system is used.

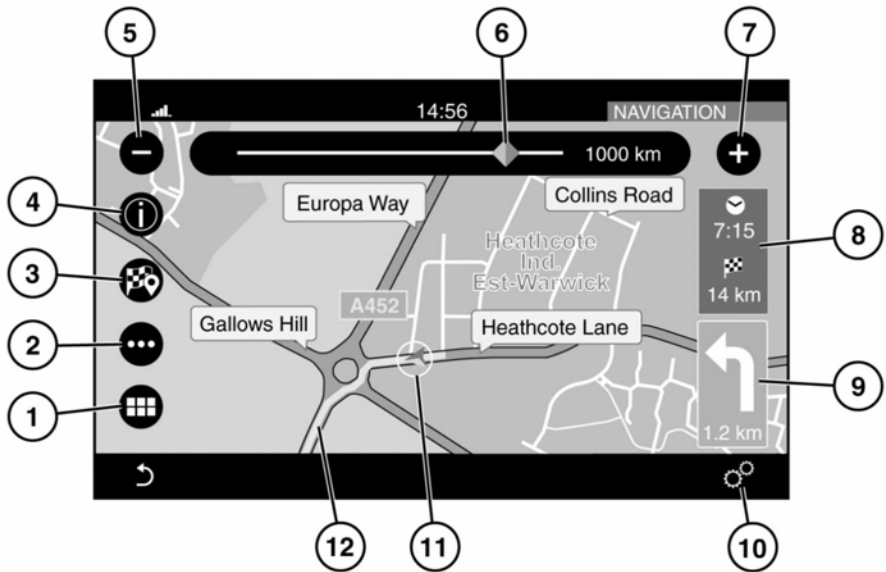
MAIN MENU



E166331

1. **Where To?:** Touch for a list of options for setting a destination. See **168, WHERE TO?**.
2. **Map View:** Touch to view the map screen.
3. **Favourites:** Touch to view the list of stored destinations.
4. **Settings:** Touch to view the **General settings** or **Navigation** menu. See **167, SETTINGS**.
5. **Stop Guidance:** Touch to cancel the current route guidance.
6. **Emergency:** Touch to see a list of emergency services. See **169, EMERGENCY**.
7. **Information:** Touch to display the following: **Traffic, Where am I, and Trip computer**.

MAP SCREEN



E106532

1. Touch to select the **NAV MENU**.
2. Touch to select the **Route** menu.
3. Touch to set a selected destination.
4. Touch to show information for a Point of Interest (POI), or for traffic information.
5. Touch to reduce the map size.
6. Drag the indicator along the scale to enlarge or reduce the map size, or touch the line for the position required.
7. Touch to enlarge the map size.
8. Touch to change between estimated time to destination and distance to destination.
9. Next manoeuvre icon and the distance to the next manoeuvre. Touch to hear voice guidance for the next manoeuvre.
10. Touch to view the **General settings** or **Navigation** menu. See 167, **SETTINGS**.
11. Indicates the vehicle's position on the set route.
12. The route that has been set.

SETTINGS

Touch the Settings icon on the **NAV MENU** screen, or on the map screen, to view the following options:

- **Speed limit warning.**
Note: When the Speed limit warning feature is in operation, it will only register the official speed limit for the road; it will not register any temporary speed limits (e.g., speed limits for: road works, congestion, fog, etc.). Also, speed limits shown are only accurate up to the last map update.
- **Guidance.** See 168, **SETTINGS - GUIDANCE**.

Navigation system

- **POI list sorting.**
- **GPS:** Select to set the coordinate format.
- **Map Display Mode:** Select to set **Day**, **Night**, or **Automatic** as an option.
- **Map View:** Select **2D** or **3D**.
- **Orientation.**
- **Current Street.**
- **Auto Zoom.**
- **Show POI Icons.**
- **POI icon list** (only available when **Show POI Icons** is selected).
- **TMC Incidents.**
- **Speed and Flow.**
- **3D City Models.**
- **3D Landmarks.**
- **Digital Terrain Model.**
- **Park Areas.**
- **Railroads.**
- **City Areas.**
- **River Names.**
- **System Information.**

SETTINGS - GUIDANCE

Touch the **Guidance** option on the **Settings** menu, to view the following options:

- **Play Voice Guidance Prompts.**
- **Lane Recommendation.**
- **Junction View.**
- **TMC Route Mode.**
- **TMC Avoidance Types:** Select to switch the following **ON/OFF**:
 - **Accidents.**
 - **Closures.**
 - **Traffic flow.**
 - **Lane Restrictions.**

- **Others.**

- **Avoid** (only available when under guidance).

WHERE TO?

To set route guidance, select **Where To?** on the **NAV MENU** to view the following options:

- **Address:** Touch to view the following options:
 - **Spell City.**
 - **Enter Post Code.**
 - **Enter Country.**
- **Recent:** Select to view a list of recent destinations; touch the required destination from the list.
- **Point of interest (POI):** Select to view the POI list of locations and public places.
- **Favourites:** Select to view a list favourite destinations.
- **Go Home:** Select to enter the destination as a home address, or to select a preset home address destination.
- **Intersection:** Select and enter the area required (**City**, **Town**, etc.) followed by 2 street names, to find an Intersection destination.
- **GEO Coordinate:** Select to enter a known GEO Coordinate as a destination. A GEO Coordinate can be obtained from a handheld GPS receiver, a map, or the Navigation system.
- **Point on Map:** Use to select a destination directly from the map screen. By selecting a street segment or icon, you can quickly enter a destination without the need to input the city name or street.
- **City Centre:** Select to enter the name of a city. The Navigation system will calculate a route to the centre of the City entered.

- **Closest Cities:** Select to view a list of the Closest cities.
- **Phone Number:** Select and enter a known phone number as a destination.

POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

To set a destination from the selection of POIs: In **Where To?**, touch **Point of Interest** to view the following list:

- **All Categories.**
- **Gas Stations.**
- **Restaurants.**
- **Hotels.**
- **ATM / banking.**
- **Spell name.**

The POI search area selection can also be changed by selecting the **Change Search Area** soft key; the following options are listed:

- **Around Me.**
- **Near Destination** (this is only available during a route guidance).
- **In a City.**
- **Along Route** (this is only available during a route guidance).

When the required POI has been found, touch to select it as a destination.

EMERGENCY

On the **NAV MENU** screen, select **Emergency** to see the following list of emergency options:

- **Hospital:** Search and route to a hospital close to your current location.
- **Police:** Search and route to a police station close to your current location.
- **Location:** Select to show details of your current location.
- **Save:** Select to save your location as a favourite.

To search for any of the emergency services listed:

1. Select the emergency service required.
2. Use one of the following categories to find the emergency service:
 - **Name.**
 - **Distance.**
3. Select the required emergency service from the list and touch **Yes** to confirm the destination.
4. If you are already on a route guidance, the system will ask you to select one of the following:
 - **Cancel previous route.**
 - **Add as first destination.**
 - **Add as last destination.**

TO SET A SELECTED DESTINATION

Once a destination has been selected, there are 4 options:

- **Yes:** Select to accept the selected destination and start guidance.
- **Options:** When calculating a route, various options can be selected. Before accepting the requested route, touch **Options** to view the following list of options:
 - **Fast.**
 - **Short.**
 - **Economical.**
 - **Route Alternative.**
 - **Round Trip.**Select the required option from the list.
- **Avoid:** When calculating a route, a road type to avoid can be set. Before accepting the requested route, touch **Avoid** to view a list of options to avoid. Select the required option from the list.

Navigation system

- **Save:** When calculating a route, the destination can be saved as a favourite. Before accepting the requested route, touch **Save** to save the route to your **Favourites**.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

SOFT KEY ICONS



Touch this icon to edit text or delete the text from the list.



Touch this icon to change the order of text in a list. Use the up and down arrows to move the text to the required position. Touch the icon again to register the new position.

NAVIGATION TERMS AND CONDITIONS

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC (“Jaguar Land Rover”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. © 2014 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive licence from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information. ©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

Terms and Conditions

- **Personal Use Only:** You agree to use this Data together with the provided Jaguar Land Rover navigation system for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.
- **Restrictions:** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Jaguar Land Rover, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.



The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

- **No Warranty:** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Jaguar Land Rover and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.
- **Disclaimer of Warranty:** Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

- **Disclaimer of Liability:** Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.
- **Export Control:** Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licences and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.
- **Entire Agreement:** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.
- **Governing Law:** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the Netherlands, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the Netherlands for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

- **Government End Users:** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Notice of use

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)
NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)
ADDRESS:




c/o Nokia 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago,
Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.




© 1987 - 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

-  **Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition, as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.**
-  **Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures and electrical sparks.**
-  **Switch off any personal electronic devices, such as mobile phones or music players, when refuelling.**

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

-  Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228 (or the national equivalent).
-  Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes (e.g., manganese-based), or fuel additives, as these may adversely affect the emissions control systems, and may affect warranty coverage.
-  Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

OCTANE RATING


3.0L (V6) petrol engine

Jaguar Land Rover Limited recommends the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to achieve optimum performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

2.0L (I4) petrol engine

Jaguar Land Rover Limited requires the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to contribute to optimum performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, you may use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON, but this may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause audible engine 'knock' and other driveability problems.

-  Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON, as severe engine damage may occur.

***Note:** Occasional, light, engine knock, experienced while accelerating or climbing hills, is acceptable.*



If a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even when using fuel to the recommended octane rating, or if you hear engine knock while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the problem corrected. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which Jaguar Land Rover is not responsible.

If in doubt, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer in the territory concerned.

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel (where available) may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.


ETHANOL

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (E5 and E10) may be used.

-  This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.
-  Do not use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content). The equipment necessary for the use of fuels containing more than 10% ethanol is not fitted to this vehicle. If E85 fuels are used, serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers will not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

METHANOL

 Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol, may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered under warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used, provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether based compound derived from petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES


Use only high quality diesel fuel according to EN590 or equivalent.


 Jaguar vehicles are capable of running with up to a 7% blend of bio-diesel, in accordance with European Standard EN590. Jaguar Land Rover Limited does not recommend use of a higher blend of bio-diesel.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Jaguar Land Rover strongly recommends the use of premium, or highest quality available, fuel.


High quality fuel promotes a longer life for the engine components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to engine components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.


Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

 If you inadvertently fill the vehicle with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. Contact a Dealer/ Authorised Repairer immediately.

 Jaguar Land Rover Limited can accept no responsibility for any damage caused by running the vehicle with fuel other than those stipulated.


SULPHUR CONTENT

 If the vehicle is equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF), an exhaust after treatment system, then the maximum sulphur content of the fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million), in accordance with EN590-EU4, or World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) Cat 3.

 The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in Jaguar vehicles not fitted with a DPF, should not exceed 0.3% (3 000 parts per million).

In some countries, diesel fuel will contain higher levels of sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on the engine and the exhaust after treatment components. If in doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

Fuel and refuelling

 Using an incorrect specification of fuel will cause serious damage to the engine and/or the exhaust after treatment system, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. If in doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

In order to comply with exhaust emissions requirements, some vehicles with diesel engines are fitted with a reservoir containing Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). In some markets, DEF is known as AdBlue®.

Note: *It is a legal requirement that the DEF system is used correctly, as detailed in this handbook. It may be a criminal offence to run the vehicle when it is not consuming the correct specification of DEF.*


DEF consumption can vary greatly dependent on driving style and conditions, but the average rate of consumption is approximately 1 litre for every 1000 miles.


Note: *When the DEF level becomes low, an appropriate message will be displayed in the Message centre. It is recommended to contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to arrange a DEF refill, at the earliest opportunity.*


The Message centre will display a distance countdown, when the DEF level becomes too low. The DEF should be topped up before the distance range falls to zero. Failure to do so, will result in the vehicle failing to start.

DEF can be added to the reservoir by using the top-up procedure; however, a full system refill is still recommended at the earliest opportunity.

Two standard sized non-drip refill bottles, each containing 1.89 litres (0.42 gallons) of fluid, is the minimum amount required to restart the engine. Refill bottles are available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.


 When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**. Use of incorrect fluid could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Do not start the engine. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

 Do not use DEF dispensing nozzles as used for commercial vehicles. The system is not designed to be filled under the pressure and flow-rate that such pumps dispense at, therefore damage could occur.

 DEF can smell unpleasant and stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.

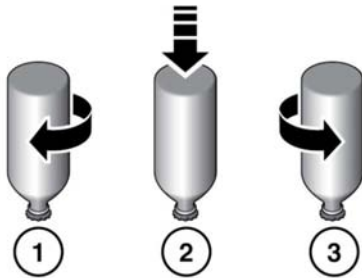
 **Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF.**

 **DEF must be kept out of the reach of children.**

 DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure:

Locate the DEF reservoir. See **203, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**. Remove the reservoir filler cap by turning counter-clockwise.



E163458

1. Place the refill bottle over the reservoir filler cap aperture and turn clockwise, until it is locked into position.
2. Press the base of the refill bottle, until all of the fluid has completely drained into the reservoir.
3. Turn the refill bottle counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Repeat the procedure with the second refill bottle.
5. Replace the reservoir filler cap. Tighten by hand, turning clockwise, until a click is heard.

Note: In extremely low temperatures below -10°C (14°F), DEF may freeze in the reservoir making refilling difficult. It is recommended to take the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage, to raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top-up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message will extinguish.

Note: When starting and stopping the engine, you may hear the DEF pumps initiating and shutting down. This is normal operation, and no cause for concern.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



E173310

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL



Avoid running out of fuel!

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres (0.9 gallons) will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refuelling, before attempting to restart the engine.

Note: If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

WATER IN FUEL



If the warning **WATER IN FUEL** is displayed in the Message centre, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel filter bowl. Seek assistance from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the filter drained as soon as possible.

DIESEL ENGINES

Vehicles with a diesel engine are equipped with an automated system protection function, to prevent the fuel tank from emptying completely, as this may severely damage the fuel injection system. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system will activate a reduced power mode (i.e., the engine will not run properly). After a short period of time, this will also be followed by the engine being stopped. In this event, the engine can be re-started and run for approximately 60 seconds.

Fuel and refuelling


Note: When the system protection function is activated, it will inhibit the operation the Intelligent stop/start feature and a diesel particulate regeneration.

If the fuel gauge indicates low fuel or the warning indicator illuminates, the fuel tank should be refuelled as soon as possible, with at least 4 litres (0.9 gallons) of fuel.

If the system protection function has activated, the vehicle must be refuelled, and then restarted using the following procedure:

1. With the brake pedal pressed (for vehicles with an automatic transmission), or the clutch pedal pressed (for vehicles with a manual transmission), press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds.
2. Release the **START/STOP** button.
3. With the brake pedal pressed (for vehicles with an automatic transmission), or the clutch pedal pressed (for vehicles with a manual transmission), press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

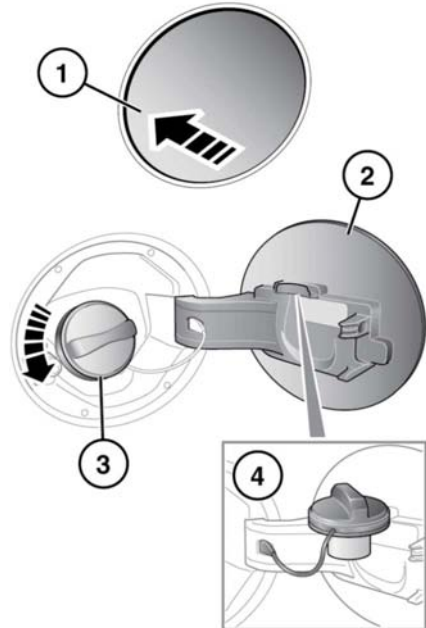
Note: If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds with the ignition in Convenience mode, before repeating the procedure from the beginning.

-  Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously.

FUEL FILLER FLAP



Take note of all the warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap.



E167357

The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart key, before the filler flap can be opened.

1. Press and release the rear of the flap (in the area indicated) to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Twist the cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Stow the cap on the lip provided on the top of the hinge arm, as shown.

When replacing the cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks. Failure to do so may cause the Engine malfunction warning lamp to illuminate. If the warning lamp illuminates, make sure the cap is fitted properly.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until latched closed.

Note: The filler flap will only be locked closed when the vehicle is centrally locked.

FUEL FILLER



When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.



Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.



Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire/explosion.



Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure that you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.



Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck.



If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing, to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.

DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

Diesel engine vehicles in some markets are equipped with a misfuelling protection device, incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the Diesel misfuelling protection device will activate.

Note: The Diesel misfuelling protection device may not activate if the petrol nozzle is only partially inserted.



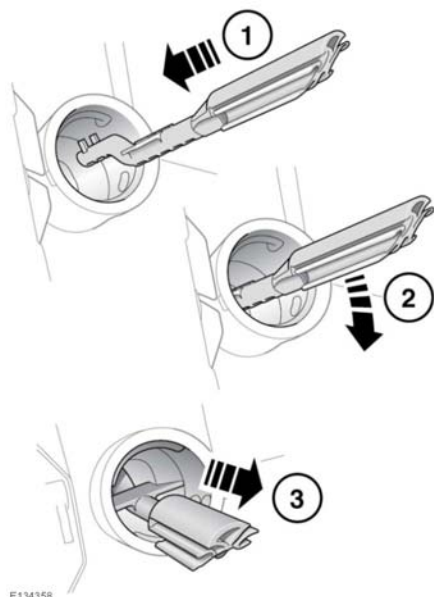
When the misfuelling protection device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Note: It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with the incorrect fuel.

Note: The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling protection device.

When activated, the yellow misfuelling protection device will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue, with the correct fuel, the misfuelling protection device must be reset.

Fuel and refuelling



E134358

The reset tool is stored in the vehicle's tool kit, located under the luggage compartment floor panel. Vehicles supplied with a spare wheel, see **236, WHEEL CHANGING**. Vehicles supplied with a tyre repair kit, see **231, TYRE REPAIR KIT**.

To reset the misfuelling protection device:

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth, by pushing down on the top of the reset tool.
3. With the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.

⚠ Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

Note: When reset, the yellow part of the misfuelling protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.

Replace the reset tool back into the vehicle's tool kit.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the fuel tank is empty. When refuelling the vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity, as there will be a small reserve remaining in the fuel tank. See **253, CAPACITIES**.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures shown in the following table, have been calculated using a standard testing procedure (Regulation (EC) 715/2007), and produced in accordance with The Passenger Car Fuel Consumption (Amendment) Order 1996.

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure, depending on driving technique, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, vehicle load and condition.

Variant	Transmission	Urban Ltr/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban Ltr/100 km (mpg)	Combined Ltr/100 km (mpg)	CO ₂ emissions g/km
3.0L petrol	Automatic	11.6 (24.4)	6.1 (46.3)	8.1 (34.9)	194
2.0L petrol	Automatic	10.2 (27.7)	6.0 (47.1)	7.5 (37.7)	179
2.0L diesel (163 PS)	Manual	4.4 (64.2)	3.4 (83.1)	3.8 (75.0)	99
2.0L diesel (180 PS)	Manual	5.0 (56.5)	3.7 (76.4)	4.2 (67.3)	109
2.0L diesel (180 PS) With 17 inch wheels	Automatic	5.0 (56.5)	3.7 (76.4)	4.2 (67.3)	109
2.0L diesel (180 PS) All other wheel sizes	Automatic	5.1 (55.4)	3.7 (76.4)	4.2 (67.3)	111

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations, and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (31 mph) with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises of steady-speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations, and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed is 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km (4 miles).

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.



For extra information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at:

<http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/>

RUNNING-IN

This vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in, relative to each other. This process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km (2 000 miles) of operation.

During this running-in period of 3 000 km (2 000 miles), observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not use full throttle during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer trips.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming mileage to service countdown (from 3 200 km to 0 km) will be displayed in the Message centre, each time the ignition is switched on. When the mileage to service countdown reaches 0 km, then the **Service Required** message will be displayed, every time the ignition is switched on.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES



The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.



Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to Jaguar vehicles.



All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system should be new and equivalent to the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment, while complying with the SAE Standards. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.



This symbol may be used on an under bonnet label and is relevant to the air conditioning refrigerant fluid. The symbol identifies extremely flammable chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire when in contact with air.

AIRBAG SYSTEM



The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.

Maintenance

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system, always consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, 2-way radio, or in-car entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM



No modifications or additions should be made to the Anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

OWNER MAINTENANCE



Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine services and inspections, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently. These checks can be carried out by the owner and advice is given on the pages that follow.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers, and warning indicators.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C).

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

Diesel vehicles equipped with a particle filter have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving.

When a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by an amber warning lamp, the filter requires a regeneration cycle to clean itself. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration takes place automatically at an interval of approximately 300-900 km (190-560 miles), depending on driving conditions. Regeneration normally takes 10-20 minutes and is automatically requested by the engine control module if the vehicle is driven steadily at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h to 112 km/h (40 mph to 70 mph). It is possible that the regeneration process will occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the events may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Note: *If regeneration is not successfully carried out, the amber warning lamp will eventually be replaced by a red warning lamp.*

If a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by a red warning lamp, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

DRIVING SHORT DISTANCES OR IN COLD WEATHER

If the vehicle is frequently driven short distances or in cold weather conditions, then the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) does not take place and the filter is not efficiently cleaned. When the filter reaches a condition when a filter regeneration is appropriate and the current drive style is not appropriate, a warning triangle on the Instrument panel illuminates and the message **DPF Full. See manual** is displayed in the Message centre. This is not indicating a fault condition with the vehicle and no dealership support should be required. Start regeneration of the filter by driving the vehicle, preferably on a main road or motorway. The vehicle should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes or more.

When regeneration is complete, the warning text is cleared automatically.

Note: *A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during regeneration.*









ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in severe or arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to the servicing requirements. Refer to your Service book for further details, this is supplied in the vehicle's literature pack, or contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.




ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

It is essential that any dynamometer testing is carried out only by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by Dealers/Authorised Repairers.


SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

-  If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.
-  Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area.
-  Do not work beneath the vehicle with a jack as the only means of support.
-  **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**
-  Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys, and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped.
-  Remove metal wristbands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.
-  Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition switched on.
-  Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

FUEL SYSTEM

-  Under no circumstances, should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.
-  Make sure that sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.
-  Wear protective clothing, including, where practical, gloves made from an impervious material.

USED ENGINE OIL

-  Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.



It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

OPENING THE BONNET



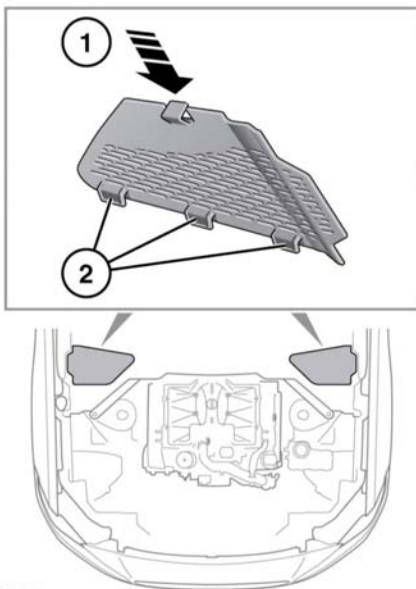
1. Pull the handle, located in the left-side front footwell, to release the bonnet securing latch.
2. Push up on the safety catch lever, located below the centre point of the bonnet, and then raise the bonnet.

CLOSING THE BONNET

-  Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the bonnet securing latch clicks to confirm full engagement.
2. Check that the securing latch is fully engaged, by attempting to lift both sides of the front edge of the bonnet. This should be free from all movement.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL



E165288

Open the bonnet and follow the procedure below:

1. Lightly push back and hold the cover's front retaining lug.
2. Lift up the cover and slide forwards to release the rear locating lugs.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING

Open the bonnet and follow the procedure:

1. Locate the cover's rear locating lugs into the vehicle's panel.
2. Lightly press down the cover to engage the front retaining lug into the vehicle's panel.

Note: *The cover should be a flush fit and aligned to the vehicle's panel.*

CHANGING A BULB



If the exterior lamps have just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool. Handling them when hot may cause personal injury.



To avoid personal injury, due to any possible residual electrical current, make sure not to touch any electrical connectors or circuit boards while changing a bulb. If removal of the outboard rear lamp is required, always wear appropriate gloves when disconnecting the wiring loom from the rear lamp.



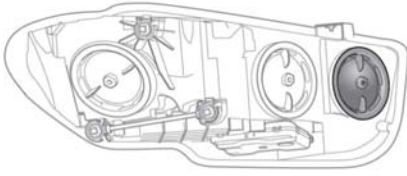
Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.



Before attempting a bulb change, make sure that the ignition and the affected lamp are switched off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur, which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

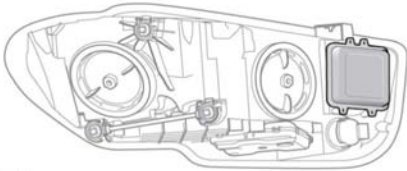
Not all bulbs are renewable, for the specification of those which are see **254, BULB SPECIFICATION**.

All the other lamps should only be renewed or serviced by qualified personnel.




E165947

Vehicles with Halogen headlamps will have a removable inboard access cover, as illustrated.





E165948


Vehicles with Xenon headlamps will not have a removable inboard access cover. Xenon headlamps have an igniter module, as illustrated.

 **Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel. See 188, XENON LAMPS.**

XENON LAMPS

 **Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.**

 **High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapour which are used to power Xenon lamps. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury.**

 The Daytime running lamp, within the Xenon headlamp unit, is a Light Emitting Diode (LED) lamp. Failure of the Daytime running lamp will require a complete Xenon headlamp unit to be installed by qualified personnel.

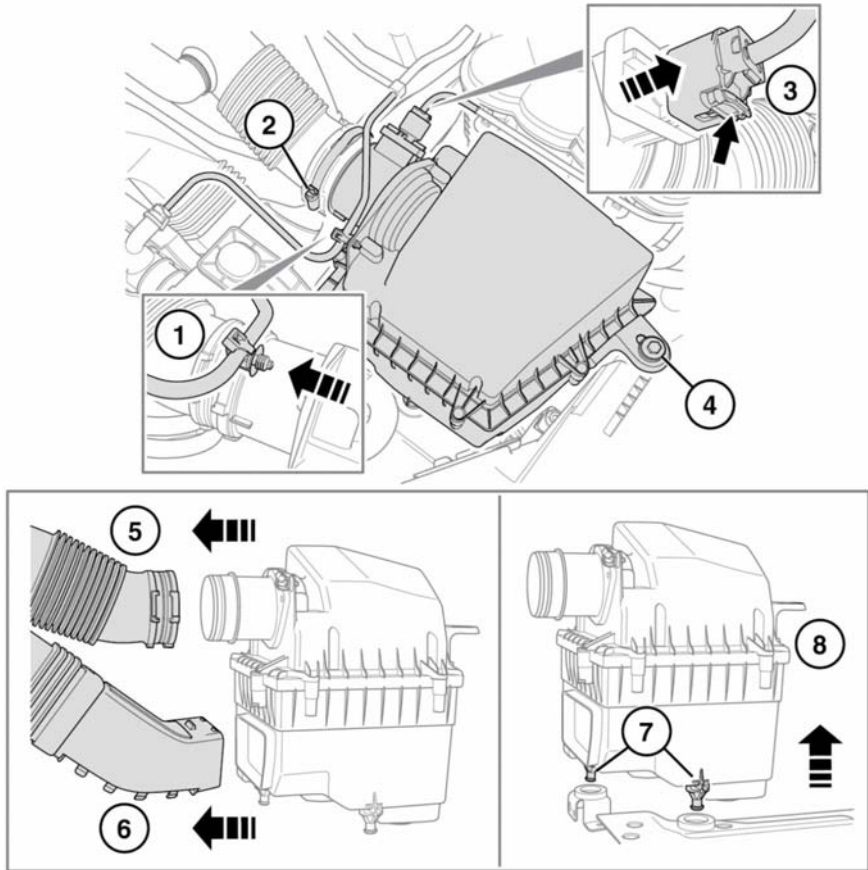
Correct disposal of the Xenon lamp unit should be referred to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer or the local authority.

The direction indicator bulb, within the Xenon headlamp, is renewable. See **192, FRONT DIRECTION INDICATOR BULB REPLACEMENT.**

HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT - HALOGEN HIGH BEAM

 See **187, CHANGING A BULB.**

Air cleaner removal



E169042

The air cleaner will have to be removed to allow access to the left side High beam/Daytime running lamp bulb holder/bulb unit on all engine variants. This will also apply to the right side for Vehicles with a 3.0L petrol engine.

Open the bonnet and follow the procedure below:

1. Lightly pull the coolant pipe/retaining lug, to release it from the air cleaner.

Note: Do not use excessive force, as this may damage the coolant pipe.

2. Continually turn the air pipe clamp bolt counter-clockwise to loosen and release.
Note: Do not remove the air pipe clamp.
3. Press up and hold the lug at the base of the electrical connection and then lightly pull to release it from the air cleaner.

- Continually turn the air cleaner retaining bolt counter-clockwise to remove.
- Lightly pull the upper air pipe to release it from the air cleaner.
- Lightly pull the lower air pipe away, to release it from the air cleaner.
- Lift up the air cleaner casing, to release the 2 locating/securing lugs.

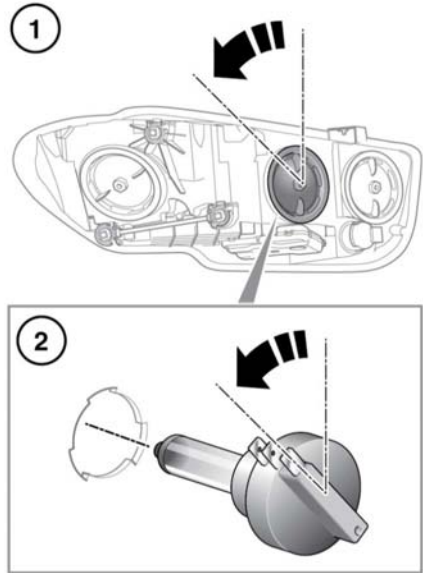
Note: If the rubber grommets remain attached to the air cleaner, then remove them and refit to the vehicle body prior to refitting the air cleaner.

- Remove the air cleaner from the vehicle.

⚠ Observe the position of the coolant pipe, wiring loom and both air pipes during the removal and refitting of the air cleaner.

Reverse the removal procedure to refit the air cleaner.

High beam/Daytime running lamp bulb holder/ bulb unit removal



E164694

Note: The bulb holder and the bulb are one complete unit. The bulb has 2 filaments, one for High beam and the other is for the halogen Daytime running lamp.

Open the bonnet and follow the procedure below:

- Rotate the headlamp cover, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then lightly pull away to remove it from the headlamp.

Note: Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

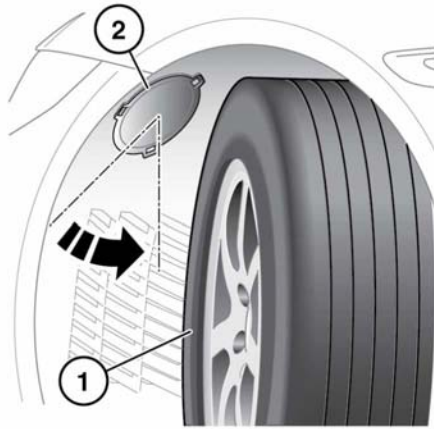
- Rotate the bulb holder/bulb unit, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove it from the headlamp.

Note: *Note the orientation of the bulb holder/bulb unit to aid refitting.*

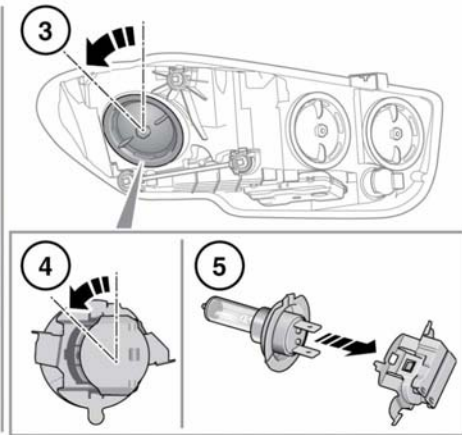
Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb holder/bulb unit.

HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT - HALOGEN LOW BEAM

⚠ See 187, CHANGING A BULB.



E164895



⚠ **To prevent the vehicle from moving and causing personal injury, make sure that the Electric parking brake is applied.**

1. To allow for greater access, start the engine and turn the steering onto the relevant full lock. Switch off the ignition.
2. Rotate the vehicle cover, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove.
3. Rotate the headlamp cover, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove.

Note: Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

4. Rotate the bulb holder, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

5. Pull the bulb to remove it from the bulb holder.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

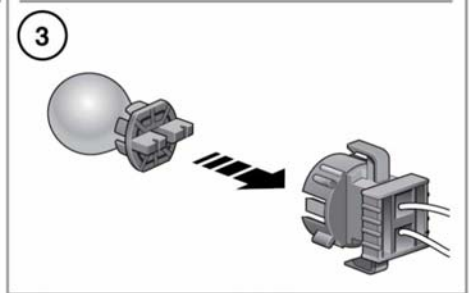
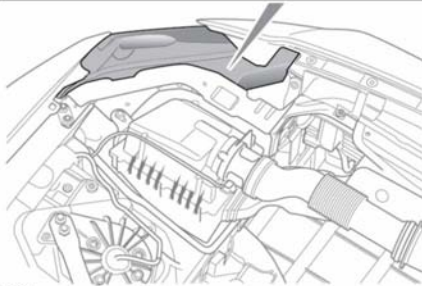
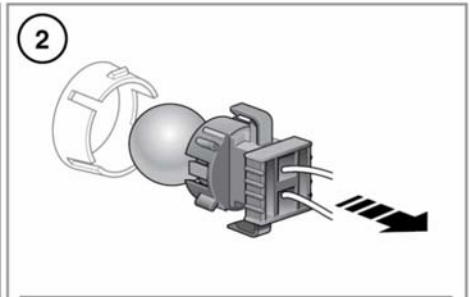
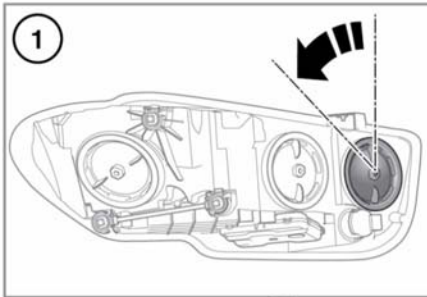
Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

- ⚠ Make sure to straighten the steering system before driving the vehicle.

FRONT DIRECTION INDICATOR BULB REPLACEMENT

⚠ See 187, CHANGING A BULB.

Halogen headlamp direction indicator bulb



E164626

1. Rotate the headlamp cover, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and remove.

Note: Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

2. Pull the bulb holder to remove it from the headlamp.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

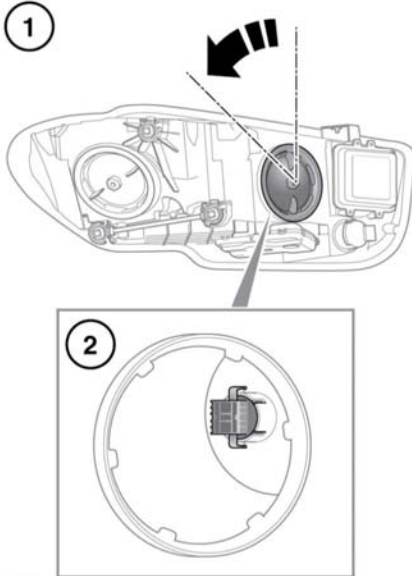
3. Pull the bulb to remove it from the bulb holder.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

Xenon headlamp direction indicator bulb

The air cleaner will have to be removed to allow access to the left side headlamp and also for the right side headlamp for vehicles with a 3.0L petrol engine. See the air cleaner removal information, **188, HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT - HALOGEN HIGH BEAM.**



1. Rotate the headlamp cover, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and remove.

Note: Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

2. Pull the bulb holder to remove it from the headlamp.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

3. Pull the bulb to remove it from the bulb holder.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

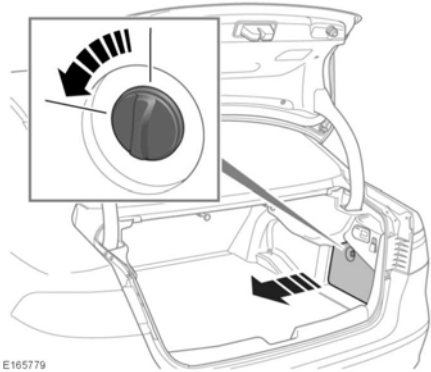
Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

REAR LAMP REMOVAL

See **187, CHANGING A BULB.**

Identify the location/s of the bulb/s to be changed and then release/remove the relevant luggage compartment access panel.

Right side access panel

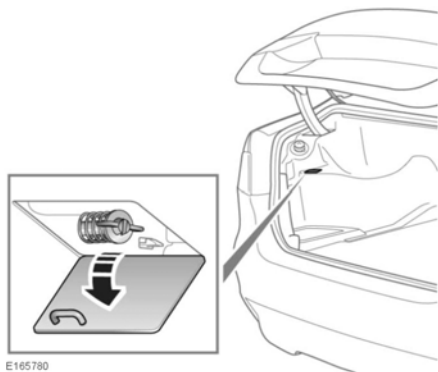


E165779

Turn the retaining lug, 90 degrees counter-clockwise, to release, then lower and lift to remove.

Reverse the removal procedure to refit.

Left side access panel

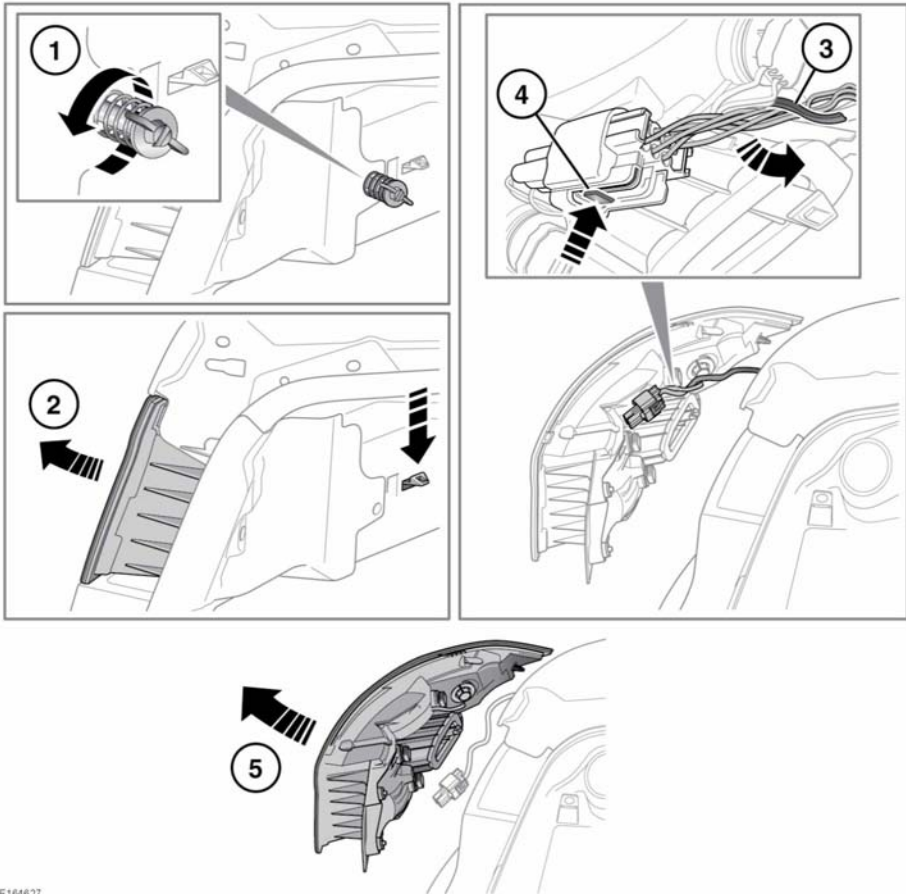


E165780

Turn the retaining lug, 90 degrees counter-clockwise, to release and then pull to lower.

Reverse the removal procedure to refit.

Rear lamp removal



E164627

1. Continually rotate the rear lamp's retaining bolt, counter-clockwise, until fully released and then remove.
2. Lightly press down and hold the rear lamp's retaining lug and then carefully move the rear lamp a small distance away from the vehicle. This will now allow access to the rear lamp's electrical connection.

- !** Do not completely remove the rear lamp from the vehicle until the vehicle's wiring loom has been released and disconnected, as this may damage the vehicle's wiring loom and the rear lamp.
3. Release the vehicle's wiring loom from the rear lamp's retaining lug.

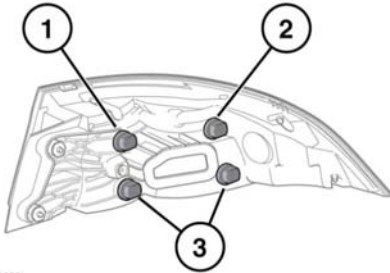
4. Press and hold the retaining lug at the base of the electrical connector and then pull to release it from the rear lamp.
5. Completely remove the rear lamp from the vehicle.

! Make sure that the rear lamp is placed on a soft surface that will not damage or scratch the rear lamp lens.

Reverse the removal procedure to refit.

REAR LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

! See 187, CHANGING A BULB.



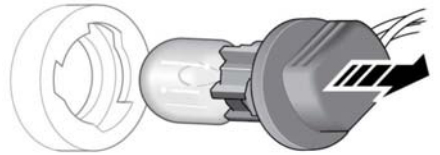
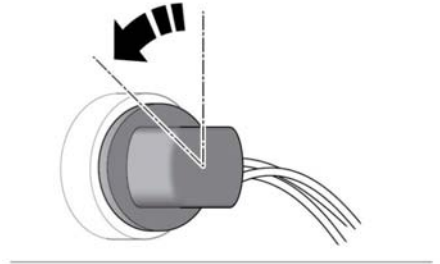
E164622

Remove the relevant rear lamp. See 194, **REAR LAMP REMOVAL**.

The bulb locations are as follows:

1. Reverse lamp.
2. Direction indicator lamp.
3. Brake lamps.

Note: Always replace both brake lamp bulbs.



E164624

Identify the location/s of the bulb/s to be changed and then follow the procedure below:

1. Rotate the bulb holder, approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise, then pull to remove it from the rear lamp.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

2. Pull the bulb to remove it from the bulb holder.

Note: Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

Reverse the whole removal process to install a new bulb.

REAR DIRECTION INDICATOR AND REVERSING LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

See 197, **REAR LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT**.

BRAKE LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

See 197, **REAR LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT**.

UNBLOCKING WASHER JETS

- ❗ Do not operate the washer jets during adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure that the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

- ❗ To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

Note: *The Smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are replaced.*

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is turned OFF.
2. Turn the ignition ON and then OFF again.
3. Immediately press the wiper stalk to its lowest position (as if to command a single wipe, see **62, WIPER OPERATION**), hold this position while turning ON the ignition again.
The wipers will move to their service position.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, turn the ignition OFF. This will return the wipers to the park position.

Note: *Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.*

SUNROOF RESET

Make sure that the conditions, listed below, are met before carrying out the sunroof reset procedure:

- The ambient air temperature needs to be within the range of 5°C to 65°C.
- The vehicle has to be stationary.
- The vehicle's battery is sufficiently charged and the electrical connections are good.

Reset the sunroof as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Manually fully close the sunroof and the sunblind. Release the switches. See **73, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.



Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an Anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur. See 75, SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM.

3. Fully press and hold the front of the sunroof switch for 10 seconds, to start the reset cycle. Continue to hold the front of the sunroof switch.

Note: *If the switch is released, then the whole procedure will have to be repeated.*

4. . The reset cycle will:
 - Fully open the sunblind.
 - Fully open and then fully close the sunroof.
 - Fully close the sunblind.



The Anti-trap system is disabled during the reset cycle. Make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped.

5. Once the reset cycle has completed and the sunblind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof and the sunblind can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows will need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the windows as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for 2 seconds.
3. Release the switch.
4. Repeat the lift and release procedure twice more.
5. Test the window for correct manual and automatic switch operation. See **73, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
6. Repeat the procedure on each window.

Note: *It is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows, to make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times.*

Vehicle cleaning

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

ALLOY WHEELS

! Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

THE EXTERIOR

! Never use cleaning products which are not approved for use on vehicles.

! To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See **198**, **WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

! Following cleaning of the vehicle exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive in order to dry out the brakes.

! Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to penetrate door and window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, radiator cooling fins, body seals, cameras or at any components which may be damaged.

Do not aim the water jet directly at any rubber gaiters or seals on suspension joints.

Make sure that the water jet nozzle is more than 300 mm (12 in) away from vehicle components.

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

! When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Park assist and Parking aids sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

PAINTWORK

! Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

! Commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes and power-operated mops, are not recommended.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

! Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.

! Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir.

GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protecting coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

SUNROOF WIND DEFLECTOR

A mild solution of soap and water, or car shampoo, should be used to clean the wind deflector net periodically. Support the underside of the net with a soft cloth, and gently scrub the net using a soft bristled brush.

REMOVING GREASE AND TAR

Remove grease or tar with Jaguar Tar Remover or methylated spirit (alcohol). White spirit is also effective, but must not be applied to rubber, particularly the windscreen wiper blades.

- ⚠ Make sure that after using methylated or white spirit, the area is washed immediately with soapy water, to remove all traces of spirit.

POLISHING

- ⚠ Chrome polish, or other abrasive cleaners, must not be used on the vehicle's brightwork.

It is recommended that the vehicle is polished regularly using Jaguar polish and a polishing cloth.

THE INTERIOR

- ⚠ The steering wheel centre pad and other areas containing airbags should only be cleaned sparingly with a damp cloth, warm water and a non-detergent soap.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months, as follows:

- Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth, to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting.
- If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
- Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner several times a year to maintain its appearance and suppleness. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protective film against dust and substances.

- Do not use solvents. Do not use detergents, furniture polish or household cleaners. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty. Jaguar recommend a basic set of products that have been specially selected for the type of leather in your vehicle.
- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.

Vehicle cleaning

- Sharp objects such as belts, zip fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, make sure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

- ! Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.
- ! Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.
- ! When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure that fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

Use Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, following the instructions. Avoid over-wetting.

REMOVING STAINS

Most stains on woollen fabric can be removed if treatment is carried out immediately, before the stain has a chance to dry-in.

Most stains can be treated with one of three cleaning fluids: Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, dry cleaning fluid or clean water. Follow the instructions on the package.

INSTRUMENT PANEL, TOUCH SCREEN AND AUDIO SYSTEM

Only use a soft dry cloth to clean the Instrument panel, Touch screen and audio system. Do not use cleaning fluids or sprays.

CARPET AND MATS

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

SEAT BELTS



Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended and do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

***Note:** While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by, a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

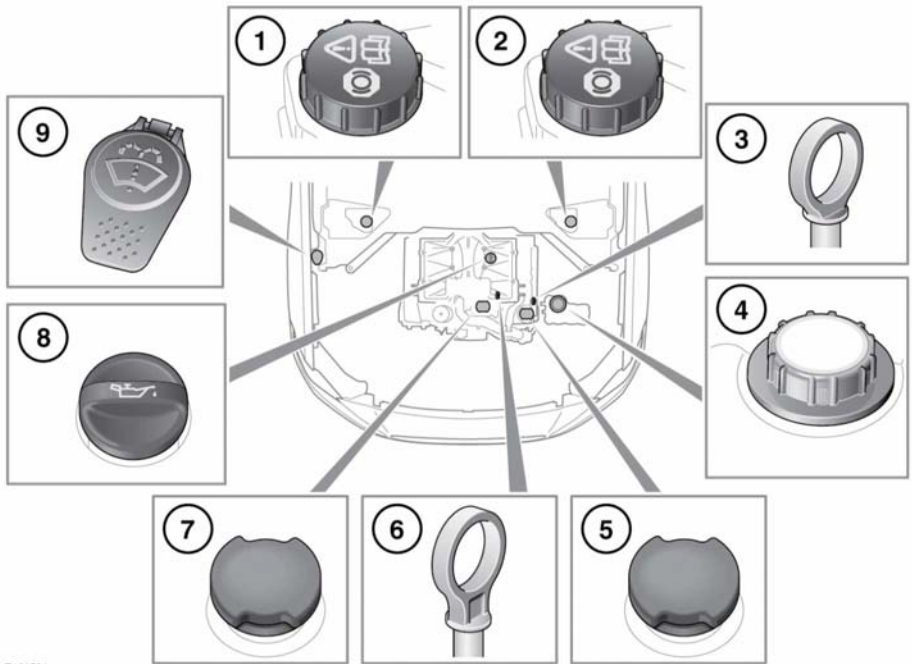


Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

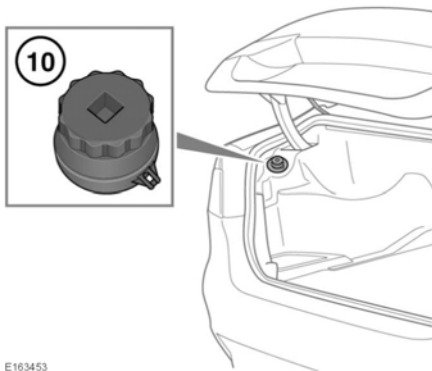


Any substance which enters the mechanism, can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS



E164561



E163453

1. Brake fluid reservoir cap (right hand drive). Remove the right side under bonnet cover for access.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap (left hand drive). Remove the left side under bonnet cover for access.
3. Engine oil level dipstick (2.0L diesel).
4. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
5. Engine oil filler cap (3.0L petrol).
6. Engine oil level dipstick (2.0L petrol).
7. Engine oil filler cap (2.0L diesel).
8. Engine oil filler cap (2.0 petrol).
9. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
10. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap.

Fluid level checks

Note: When removing the DEF reservoir filler cap, a socket drive can be used for added leverage, if it is too tight. Hand tighten only, when refitting.



While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See 186, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE.



Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if there is a possibility that any leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

The engine oil should be checked frequently and topped up as required, using the correct grade for the engine.



Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

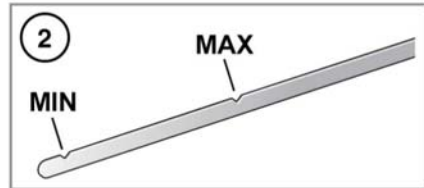
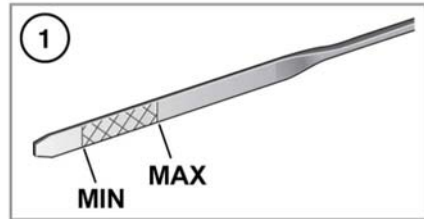


Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.



If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

2.0L petrol and 2.0L diesel engines



E150369

1. Engine oil level dipstick - 2.0L petrol engine.

2. Engine oil level dipstick - 2.0L diesel engine.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

Note: If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.

The oil level can then be checked, as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

As a general guide, if the oil level on the dipstick:

1. Is nearer to the upper mark or notch than the lower, do not add oil.

- Is nearer to the lower mark or notch than the upper, add 0.5 litres (1 pint) of oil.
- Is below the lower mark or notch, add for the diesel engine, 1.5 litres (2.6 pints) of oil and for the petrol engine, 0.8 litres (1.4 pints) of oil. Recheck the level after a further 5 minutes.

3.0L petrol engine

This engine does not have a dipstick, it has an electrical monitoring system.

The engine oil level is not monitored when the engine is running and/or the vehicle is in motion.

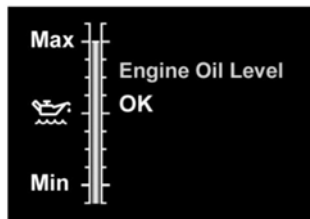
Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil has reached its normal working temperature (oil is hot).
- The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes, as the system will not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilised.

The oil level can then be checked, as follows:

- Switch on the ignition (do not start the engine).
- Select **Oil Level** from the **Vehicle Info** menu. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The engine oil level indicator will be displayed in the Message centre.



An indication of the oil level will be displayed in the gauge. Messages to the right of the gauge advise you of any action you may need to take.

If the oil level is within the required operating range, the message **Engine Oil Level OK** will be displayed. Do not add any more oil to the engine.

If the oil level is below the required operating range, a message advising you how much oil to add will be displayed (e.g., **Add 0.5 Litre**). Add the recommended quantity of oil.

If the message **Engine Oil Level Overfilled** is displayed, seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not drive the vehicle, as this will cause serious damage to the engine.

If the message **Engine Oil Level Underfilled** is displayed, add 1.5 litres (2.6 pints) of oil, then recheck the level.

If the message **Engine Oil Level Not Available** is displayed, the oil level is stabilising. Switch off the ignition, wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display.

If the warning message **ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT** is displayed, seek qualified assistance.

TOPPING UP THE OIL



Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.

Fluid level checks

❗ Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

❗ Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level should be rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

❗ It is essential to use the correct specification oil and to make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

1. Continually turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. For engines with a dipstick: Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick.

Note: The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** on the petrol engine dipstick is 0.85 litres (1.5 pints) and on the diesel engine dipstick is 1.5 litres (2.6 pints).

For engines with an electrical monitoring system:

Add oil as indicated by the engine oil level indicator messages in the Message centre.

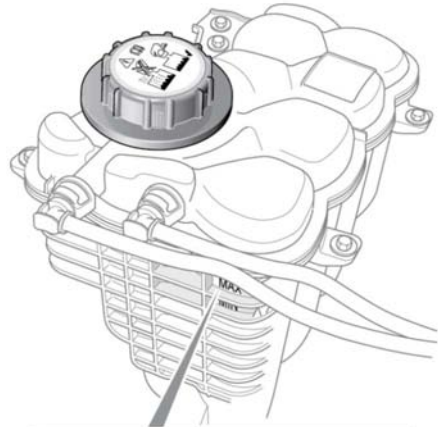
3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
5. Refit the oil filler cap by continually turning clockwise, until an audible click is heard.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

❗ Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.

❗ If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.





E166760


Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.


If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.


TOPPING UP THE COOLANT


 **Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.**


 **Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.**

 **Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine) - a fire may result.**

 **Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

 When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

 The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and; therefore, engine durability.

 Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.


Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% ± 5% all year round (not just in cold conditions). To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are retained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year and completely renewed every ten years, regardless of the distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C (68°F) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C (-40°F).

1. Remove the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating counter-clockwise.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.


Note: *In an emergency - and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable - top up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*


3. Refit the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks.


CHECKING THE BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

 **Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.**

Fluid level checks

 **Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

 **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.**

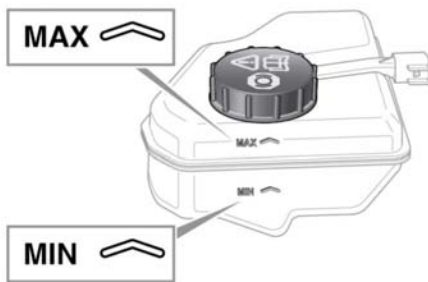
 **Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine).**

 **Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.**

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See **51, BRAKE (RED)**.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits, by gently applying the brakes. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.*

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).




E166757


1. Remove the driver's side, under bonnet cover. See **203, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **187, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.


2. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.


Note: *The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.*

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

 Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

 Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

 Only use new fluid from an airtight container (fluid from open containers or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must not be used).

 Do not top up the brake fluid to the **MAX** mark unless the brake pads have been renewed. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

1. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.

2. Remove the brake fluid reservoir filler cap by rotating counter-clockwise.

3. Top up the brake fluid reservoir to at least the **MIN** mark.

4. Refit the brake fluid reservoir filler cap by rotating clockwise.

5. Refit the under bonnet cover. See **187, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING**.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL



E106759

⚠ Do not allow the screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.

⚠ If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection.

ⓘ Only use approved washer fluid.

ⓘ Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before opening, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Open the reservoir filler cap by pulling up on the front lug.
3. Check that the fluid level is visible in the filler neck.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the front and rear screen washer jets and also the headlamp washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

1. Top up the reservoir until the fluid level is visible in the filler neck.
2. Replace the filler cap by pressing down until an audible click is heard.

Vehicle battery

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow naked flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the handbook for information, before handling the battery.

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If the main battery becomes discharged, the system will begin to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the main battery's condition is not within set parameters, there are 2 levels of warning and action which can be taken:

- **Energy Management:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen if the engine is not running, and the battery is not within the set parameters. After 3 minutes, the IPSM will begin shutting down vehicle systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen and in the Message centre if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM will begin shutting down vehicle systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.













Only start the engine, if it is safe to do so.


Note: If the message **Low Battery - Please Start Engine** is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C (32°F) or at least 60 minutes if temperatures are below 0°C (32°F). This will allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

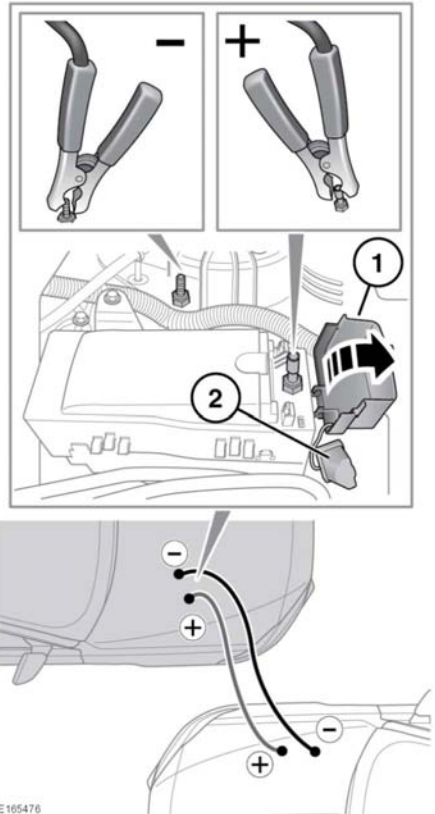


Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, a battery or the boost terminals, and never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks, and/or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

-  Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.
-  Do not expose any battery to a naked flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.
-  Do not connect the jump leads to any battery terminal on this vehicle. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. It may also result in damage to the charging system.
-  Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.
-  Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.
-  Before attempting to start a vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) is selected, for automatic transmissions.
-  Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery.
-  During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury - keep sparks and naked lights away from the battery.
-  Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads.
-  Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.

-  Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment.

Note: Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's (under bonnet) boost point terminals, make sure that the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.



E165476

Open the bonnet and locate the engine compartment front fuse box. See **214, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**. Release the 2 covers to access the positive boost point terminal:

1. The fuse box has a recess to allow this access cover to be lifted up via a lug.

Vehicle battery

2. Lightly pull up this access cover to release.
Follow this procedure to connect and disconnect the jump leads:

1. Connect one end of the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

Note: Refer to the donor vehicle's handbook for the recommended boost terminal location.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (Red) jump lead to the disabled vehicle's (under bonnet) positive boost point terminal.

3. Connect one end of the negative (Black) jump lead to the negative boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

Note: Refer to the donor vehicle's handbook for the recommended boost terminal location.

4. Connect the other end of the negative (Black) jump lead to the disabled vehicle's (under bonnet) negative boost point terminal.

Note: Check that all cables are clear of any moving components, and that all 4 connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle, and allow it to idle for a few minutes.

6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Note: Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the previously disabled vehicle, until after the jump leads have been removed.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for a few minutes.

8. Switch off the donor vehicle.

9. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the disabled vehicle.

10. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

11. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the disabled vehicle.

12. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

Refit the positive boost point terminal access covers and close the bonnet.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID



Do not connect the starting aid to any battery terminal on your vehicle. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. It may also result in damage to the charging system.

Open the bonnet, locate the engine compartment front fuse box and release the 2 covers to access the positive boost point terminal. See **210, CONNECTING JUMP LEADS**.

To start the vehicle using a starting aid, follow the procedure below:

1. Connect the positive (Red) cable to the vehicle's (under bonnet) positive boost point terminal.

2. Connect the negative (Black) cable to the vehicle's (under-bonnet) negative boost point terminal.

3. Connect/switch on the starting aid.

4. Start the engine and allow it to idle for a few minutes.



5. Disconnect/switch off the starting aid.

6. Disconnect the negative (Black) cable from the vehicle.


7. Disconnect the positive (Red) cable from the vehicle.

Refit the positive boost point terminal access covers and close the bonnet.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

-  The battery must be disconnected and removed from the vehicle before charging. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
-  Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement, should only be carried out by qualified personnel. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

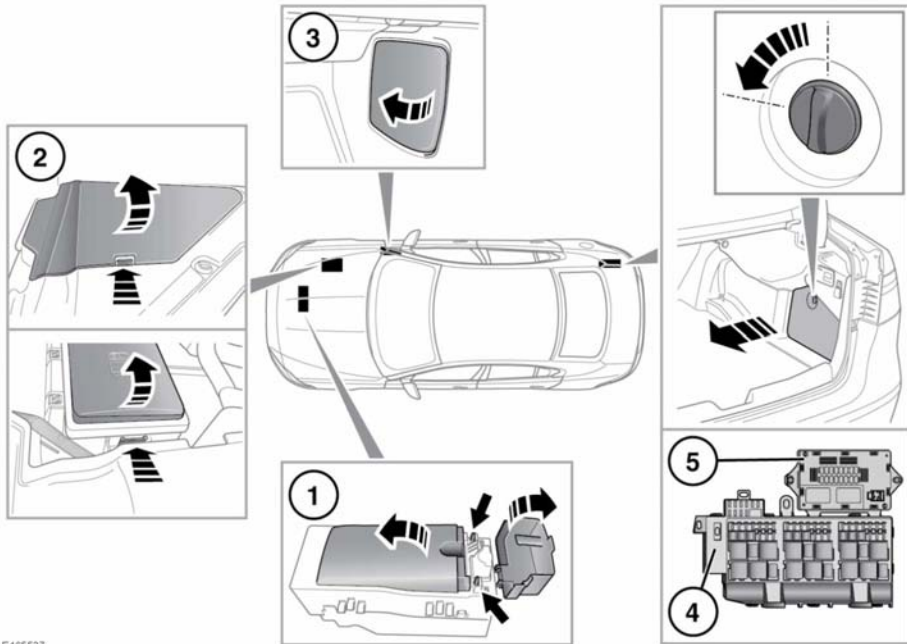
REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

-  Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement, should only be carried out by qualified personnel. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or the local authority.

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E165527

! When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture, and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

There are 5 separate fuse boxes fitted to the vehicle, each one containing fuses protecting a different group of circuits.

1. Engine compartment front fuse box:

- Lift up the positive booster terminal cover. Press and hold the fuse box cover retaining clips and then lift to open the cover.

2. Engine compartment rear fuse box:

3. Passenger compartment fuse box, located on the right-side 'A' pillar, below the fascia:

- Remove the under bonnet cover by lightly pressing and holding the retaining clip, then lift to release and pull to remove. See **187, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.

Press and hold the fuse box cover retaining clip to lift and pull to remove.

4. Luggage compartment lower fuse box:

- Use a suitable tool to unclip and release the rearward edge of the panel, and then pull to remove.

Note: Note the orientation of the panel to aid refitting.

- The fuse box is accessed by removing the right-side luggage compartment access panel. Turn the retaining lug 90 degrees counter-clockwise to release and remove the access panel.

Note: This fuse box also contains spare fuses and the vehicle's fuse removal tool.

5. Luggage compartment upper fuse box:

- The fuse box is accessed by removing the right-side luggage compartment access panel. Turn the retaining lug 90 degrees counter-clockwise to release and remove the access panel.

CHANGING A FUSE



Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.



Only fit Jaguar approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification.



If the replacement fuse blows after installation, the system should be checked by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Jaguar recommend that only qualified personnel should remove or replace relays.

The vehicle's fuse removal tool and some spare fuses, are located in the luggage compartment lower fuse box.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Engine compartment front fuse box

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
1	5	Tan	Left-side headlamp motor
2	5	Tan	Headlamp control module
3	5	Tan	Right-side headlamp motor
4	-	-	-
5	-	-	-
6	30	Green	Headlamp power wash
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	-	-	-
10	15	Blue	Intercooler water pump

Engine compartment rear fuse box

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit	Not applicable to:
11	15	Blue	Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) valve. Engine management (MAF/IAT sensor). Front heated oxygen sensor (H02S).	2.0L petrol.
12	15	Blue	Variable Valve Timing (VVT). Fuel volume control valve. Active vanes motor.	2.0L petrol.
13	10	Red	Neutral position sensor. Fan cooling box. Pump leak detection. Temperature sensor. Fuel type sensor. Engine management (MAF/IAT sensor). Fuel leak detection.	-
14	15	Blue	Compressor Shut Off Valve (CSOV). Compressor Recirculation Valve (CRV). Exhaust Gas Recirculation Cooler Bypass Valve (EGRCBV). Variable Valve Timing (VVT).	3.0L petrol. 2.0L petrol.
	10	Red	Compressor Shut Off Valve (CSOV). Compressor Recirculation Valve (CRV). Exhaust Gas Recirculation Cooler Bypass Valve (EGRCBV). Turbo Shut Off Valve (TSOV).	3.0L petrol. Diesel.
15	10	Red	Cooling fan control unit. Fan cooling-E box. Water in diesel sensor. Active engine mounting solenoid. Motor cooling fan. Purge control valve.	-
16	25	Clear	Engine control module. Capacitor. Ignition coil.	Diesel.
17	20	Yellow	Exhaust sensors.	-
18	20	Yellow	Exhaust sensors.	2.0L petrol.
19	20	Yellow	Exhaust sensors.	2.0L petrol. Diesel.
20	-	-	-	-
21	-	-	-	-
22	5	Tan	Intercooler water pump.	2.0L petrol.
23	5	Tan	Engine control module. Starter monitor. Voltage Quality Module (VQM).	-

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit	Not applicable to:
24	15	Blue	Electronic Transmission Switch (ETS). Transmission Control Module (TCM).	Manual transmission.
25	30	Green	Starter Motor.	Vehicles without Intelligent stop/start.
26	-	-	-	-
27	25	Clear	Transfer Case Control Module (TCCM).	-
28	-	-	-	-

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
1	20	Yellow	Sunroof
2	5	Tan	Brake pedal switch
3	5	Tan	Immobiliser Antenna Unit (IAU)
4	5	Tan	J1962 Connector
5	5	Tan	Battery backup sounder
6	20	Yellow	Second row auxiliary power socket
7	20	Yellow	Cubby box auxiliary power socket
8	30	Green	Left front seat
9	30	Green	Right front seat
10	30	Green	Left front seat
11	30	Green	Right front seat
12	-	-	-
13	20	Yellow	Front auxiliary power socket
14	-	-	-
15	-	-	-
16	5	Tan	Battery voltage feed
17	5	Tan	Door handles antenna
18	15	Blue	Horns
19	-	-	-
20	20	Yellow	Driver's Heated/Climate seat
21	20	Yellow	Front passenger's Heated/Climate seat
22	25	Clear	Right front door module
23	25	Clear	Left rear door module
24	25	Clear	Right rear door module
25	25	Clear	Left front door module
26	-	-	-
27	-	-	-
28	10	Red	Heated steering wheel

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
29	5	Tan	Keyless vehicle logic module
30	20	Yellow	Keyless vehicle latch module
31	5	Tan	Singapore road pricing
32	5	Tan	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
33	15	Blue	Air Conditioning (A/C) compressor clutch
34	-	-	-
35	-	-	-

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Luggage compartment lower fuse box

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
1	20	Yellow	Luggage compartment auxiliary power socket.
2	5	Tan	Rear Heated seats control module.
3	20	Yellow	Left Heated rear seat.
4	20	Yellow	Right Heated rear seat.
5	10	Red	Adaptive dynamic suspension. Electronic differential.
6	10	Red	Message centre module.
7	-	-	-
8	25	Clear	Trailer.
9	10	Red	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank module.
10	25	Clear	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) heater control unit.
11	10	Red	Rear-view mirror. Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system. Camera.
12	10	Red	Infotainment master control fan.
13	10	Red	Heated steering wheel.
14	10	Red	Head Up Display (HUD).
15	5	Tan	Camera.
16	-	-	-
17	5	Tan	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

Fuses

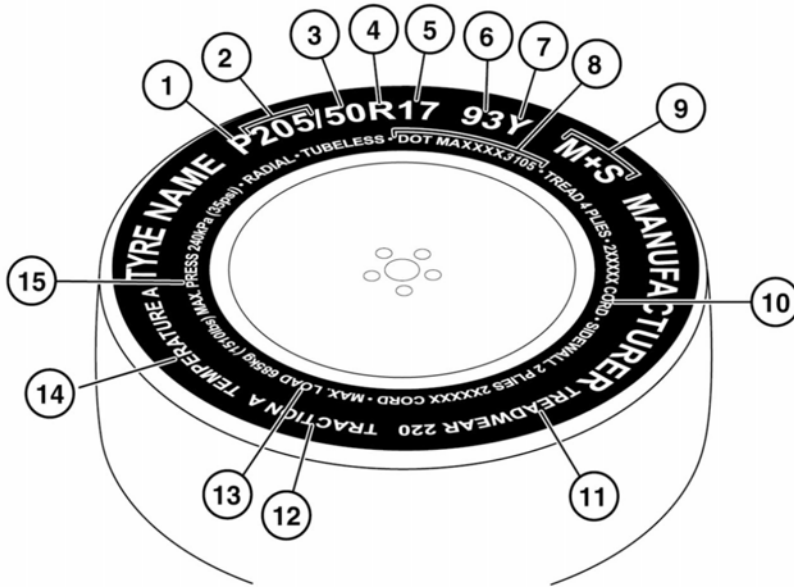
Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
18	20	Yellow	Trailer.
19	-	-	-
20	10	Red	Telematics.
21	-	-	-
22	15	Blue	Driver's door switch pack. Driver's seat control module. Driver's seat memory position switch pack. Front passenger seat control module.
23	10	Red	Rear sun blind motor.
24	20	Yellow	Rear auxiliary power socket.
25	-	-	-
26	-	-	-
27	30	Green	Deployable tow bar. Trailer.
28	30	Green	Fuel tank unit. Fuel pump driver.
29	30	Green	Powered luggage compartment lid.
30	5	Tan	Diesel pump.

Luggage compartment upper fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue	Touch screen. Climate control panel.
2	10	Red	Audio amplifier.
3	-	-	-
4	10	Red	Navigation. Television tuner.
5	15	Blue	Audio head unit.
6	15	Blue	Portable media connector panel.
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	-	-	-
10	-	-	-
11	-	-	-

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
12	-	-	-
13	-	-	-
14	-	-	-
15	15	Blue	Heating and ventilation system.
16	20	Yellow	Auxiliary heater.

TYRE MARKINGS



E153418

1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, in millimetres.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of Radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. This index is not always shown.



The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the manufacturer's original equipment supplied with the vehicle (except for approved winter tyres, see 226, USING WINTER TYRES). If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre may be used for extended periods. See **223, SPEED RATING**.
8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 3106, the tyre was made in the 31st week of 2006.

9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator: A tyre rated at 400, for example, will last twice as long as a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA, A, B, and C**.



The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading: The tyres resistance to heat is grade **A, B, or C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. This pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **226, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE



Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.



Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids, as they may cause damage to the tyre.



Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.



If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow, for example), do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).




Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.





Avoid damaging the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor when removing a tyre from the wheel and fitting a tyre to the wheel.


All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.


TYRE PRESSURES


 All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.

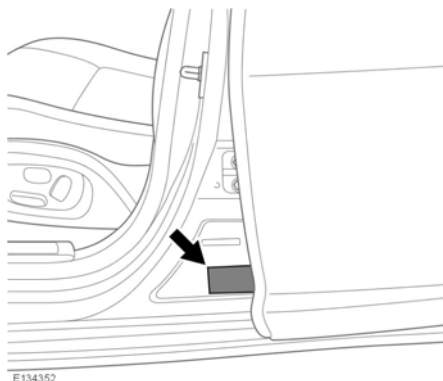
 Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.

 Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear, and poor handling.

 Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated, it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace or contact an approved repairer.


 Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

 If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.



E134352

The recommended tyre pressures are listed on a label, located on the driver's side B pillar. Open the driver's door to access the tyre pressure label.

 **The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting tyre pressures.**

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g., a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 0.14bar (2 psi, 14 kPa) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 0.3 - 0.4 bar (4 - 6 psi, 30 - 40 kPa). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyre pressures:

Note: Make sure that the tyre pressures are set for the correct vehicle load.



To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways pressure on the gauge/inflator.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

	Up to 3 occupants and 1 luggage item		Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	
Tyre size	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
205/55 R17 95V	2.8 (41, 280)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
205/55 R17 95Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
225/50 R17 98W	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
225/55 R17 101W	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
225/45 R18 95Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
245/40 R18 97Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
225/40 R19 93Y	2.5 (37, 250)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
255/35 R19 96Y	2.5 (37, 250)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
235/35 R20 92Y	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
265/30 R20 94Y	2.6 (38, 260)	2.6 (38, 260)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.




Do not twist or bend the valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge, as damage may result.


REPLACEMENT TYRES





Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern.

 **The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment supplied by the vehicle manufacturer. If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.**

 **Do not rotate tyres around the vehicle.**

 **If the use of tyres not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure that you read and fully comply with the tyre manufacturer's instructions.**

 **If lower speed rated specialist tyres are fitted (e.g., winter tyres), then the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.**

 Make sure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged during a tyre change.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tyres should be replaced in sets of 4. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra time and distance.

In order to minimise flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum, as stated on the tyre sidewall. Tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **224, TYRE PRESSURES**.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres will degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture, but they may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

Note: M+S (*mud and snow*) tyres have a level of winter performance.

The **M+S** marking on the tyre sidewall indicates an 'all season' tyre designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow, and ice.

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

Note: A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre, and the vehicle must; therefore, be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult your Jaguar dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

Winter tyres must be fitted to all 4 wheels.

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 kilometres (100 miles) on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All 4 wheels must be changed.


If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp will flash for 75 seconds and then remain illuminated. The Message centre will also display **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.


When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

Approved winter tyre sizes and pressures					
Tyre make and type	Tyre specification	Up to 3 occupants and 1 Luggage item		Maximum Gross vehicle Weight (GVW)	
		Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Front pressures bar (psi, kPa)	Rear pressures bar (psi, kPa)
Pirelli Sotto Zero 3	205/55 R17 95H	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
Pirelli Sotto Zero 3	225/50 R17 98H	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
Conti TS 830 PAO	225/50 R17 98H	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
Pirelli Sotto Zero 3	225/45 R18 95H	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
Pirelli Sotto Zero 3	245/40 R18 95H	2.3 (34, 230)	2.3 (34, 230)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
Pirelli Sotto Zero 3	225/40 R19 93H	2.5 (37, 250)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)
Pirelli Sotto Zero 3	255/35 R19 96H	2.5 (37, 250)	2.5 (37, 250)	2.9 (43, 290)	3.2 (47, 320)

If in doubt, or for further information, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

USING SNOW CHAINS

 **Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.**

 **Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.**

 **Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.**

 **Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.**


Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer, may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted to this vehicle, must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. This will help to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See **222, TYRE MARKINGS**.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

Full chain traction devices, should only be fitted to each rear wheel with these tyre sizes:

- 205/55R17.
- 225/50R17.
- 225/45R18.

 Do not fit traction devices to any other tyre size, as this will cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

Note: When using snow chains, select Winter driving mode and switch DSC off. See **136, WINTER** and **108, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as Original Equipment (OE) for Jaguar models, which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



TPMS provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.



TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres.

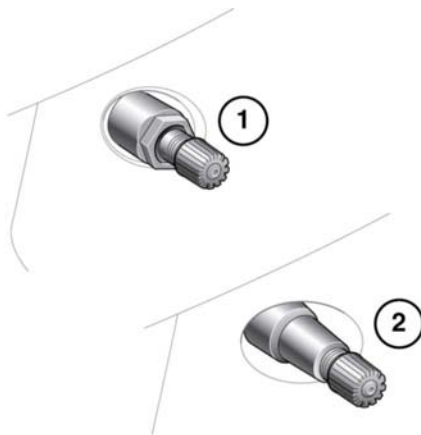


When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head to the valve stem is correctly aligned.

Note: Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always replace tyres in accordance with recommendations.

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel. Temporary-use spare tyres (when fitted) are not monitored.



E132513

Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Jaguar non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold, and adjusted as necessary. The presence of a TPMS does not remove the need to do this.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. See **54, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)**. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the recommended pressure for the vehicle's loading condition.

TYRE PRESSURE CHECK

The Instrument panel can be used to display the vehicle's tyre pressures. The tyre pressure figures can be accessed via **Vehicle Information** menu.

For more information, see **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the **Vehicle Information** and the **Tyre Information** menus.

When selected, the last known tyre pressures will be displayed, alongside the recommended cold tyre pressures (in brackets).

Note: If any of the wheels or tyres have been removed, the displayed tyre pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.


Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

RECOMMENDED TYRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

The Instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tyre pressures for your vehicle. The tyre pressure look-up table can be accessed via the **Vehicle Information** and the **Tyre Information** menus.

For more information, see **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, a number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, for example, high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle.

 **The tyre pressures displayed in the Instrument panel will not be valid if non-approved Jaguar wheels or tyres are fitted to the vehicle.**

VEHICLE LOADING

The sensitivity of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can be adjusted between **Normal Load** and **Heavy Load**, via the Instrument panel menus, **Vehicle Info**, **Tyre Pressures** and **TPM Load Setting**. The ignition will have to be switched on, without the engine running. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Every time the ignition is switched on, a TPMS message will be displayed in the Message centre, to indicate which load setting is being monitored. The message will be either **TPMS SET HEAVY LOAD** or **TPMS SET NORMAL LOAD**.

Note: *The TPMS setting must correspond with the vehicle's current load.*

The **Normal Load** TPMS setting should be used during normal use of the vehicle, for example, up to 3 occupants and one luggage item. This setting may also improve the ride comfort, providing the weight restriction for passengers and luggage is not exceeded.

The **Heavy Load** TPMS setting should be used when the vehicle's load exceeds normal use and up to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), for example, more than 3 occupants and one luggage item.

Note: *Make sure that the tyre pressures are correct for the vehicle's current load. See **224, TYRE PRESSURES**.*

TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

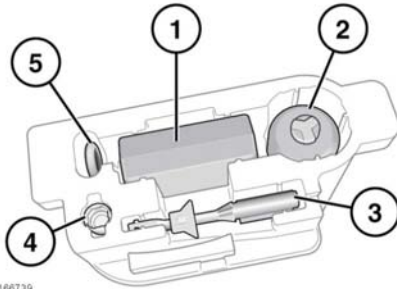
If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Note: *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

TYRE REPAIR KIT



E106739

! If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before attempting the repair.

For vehicles not supplied with a spare wheel, there will be a tyre repair kit under the luggage compartment floor panel. See **236, WHEEL CHANGING**. The tyre repair kit can be used to repair one punctured tyre and it is essential that you read the complete tyre repair kit section of this handbook before attempting to repair a tyre.

The tyre repair kit will seal most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm (1/4 inch).

Note: The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life and the expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is replaced before the expiry date. Also make sure that the sealant is renewed after each use.

1. Compressor.
2. Sealant bottle.
3. Reset tool. See **179, DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE**.
4. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
5. Towing eye.

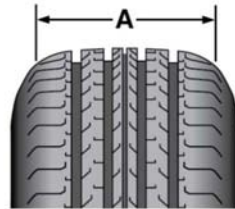
TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION



Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.



Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.



E140963

A - Tyre tread area.



Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A).



Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.



Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.



The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).



When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.



Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.








Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.









Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended, when in use.

Tyre repair kit


-  Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.
-  Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit, when in use.
-  Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.
-  Check the tyre sidewall before inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.
-  Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage, or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.


USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

-  Avoid skin contact with the sealant, which contains natural rubber latex.
-  Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.
-  Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and Park (P) is engaged.
-  Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc., from the tyre.
-  Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, as this may cause asphyxiation.
-  To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

Note: All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.

REPAIR PROCEDURE

 Check the tyre sidewall before inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps, or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre sidewall. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage appear, switch off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.


 If the tyre's inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the fascia, in the driver's field of vision. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lamps.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver (clockwise) until tight.

Note: Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal. Once the receiver has been fitted, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.

5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose and connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve. Make sure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the Off (O) position. Insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket. See **85, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**. Unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area, start the engine.
8. Switch on the compressor switch to the (I) position.
9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi, 350 kPa).

Note: When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, sealant may leak from the puncture location during the sealing process and the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.

-  Remove any excess sealant immediately. Failure to do this may result in a surface residue that will be difficult to remove.
10. During inflation, switch the compressor off briefly to check the tyre pressure, using the gauge mounted on the compressor.

Note: It should not take longer than 10 minutes to inflate the tyre. If, after 10 minutes, the tyre has not yet reached the minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.
11. Once the tyre has been inflated to the required pressure, switch off the compressor. If desired, the engine may be switched off after the compressor has been switched off.
12. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.

13. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve, by unscrewing it as quickly as possible (counter-clockwise).
14. Replace the inflation hose protective cap and the tyre valve cap.
15. Make sure that the tyre repair kit (including the bottle and receiver caps) is placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after approximately 3 km (2 miles), so make sure they are easily accessible.
16. Immediately drive the vehicle for approximately 3 km (2 miles), to allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR



When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.



Consult a tyre repair centre or a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for 3 km (2 miles), then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Make sure that the sealant container is in its original position.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.

Tyre repair kit

4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), adjust the pressure to the correct value. If there are signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving.
6. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the Off (O) position and insert the power cable connector into the auxiliary power socket. If the vehicle is in a well ventilated area, start the engine.
7. Switch the compressor to On (I) and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure. See **224, TYRE PRESSURES**.
8. To check the tyre pressure, switch off the compressor and then read the pressure from the gauge.
9. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure release valve.
10. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.












Note: *The use of the tyre repair kit sealant may lead to error prompts and incorrect readings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, use the tyre repair kit pressure gauge to check and adjust the damaged tyre's inflation pressure.*
11. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, replace the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector protective cap.
12. Make sure that the tyre repair kit is stowed securely in the vehicle.
13. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Make sure that you make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used, before the tyre is removed.
14. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver, and the sealant bottle must be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted.













Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

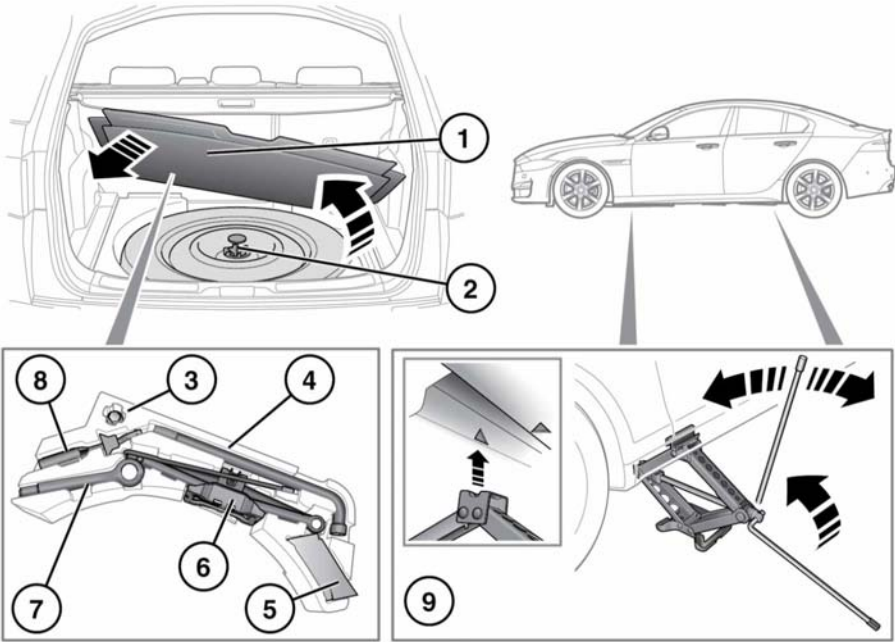
Before raising the vehicle, or changing a wheel, make sure that you read and comply with the following warnings:

-  Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway, and away from traffic.
-  Switch on the hazard warning lamps.
-  Apply the Parking brake and engage transmission P.
-  Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground.
-  Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.
-  Disconnect any trailer/caravan from the vehicle.
-  Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.
-  Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.
-  Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.
-  When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground, transmission P position will not prevent the vehicle from moving and possibly slipping off the jack as the Parking brake only operates on the rear wheels.
-  Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed, using the wheel chock supplied in the tool kit. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.

-  If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An additional chock will be needed.
-  Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.
-  Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.
-  Always position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.
-  **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**
-  Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may release suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.
-  Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.
-  Always make sure that replacement tyres have the correct rating and specifications (e.g., load index, size, speed rating) for your vehicle.
-  Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.
-  After use, the tool kit should be returned to the storage area and correctly stowed.

Wheel changing

WHEEL CHANGING



E166735

For vehicles that were not supplied with a spare wheel, see **231, TYRE REPAIR KIT**.

1. Luggage compartment floor panel: Lift the rear edge and then pull to remove.
2. Temporary-use spare wheel retaining bolt/clamp.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
4. Wheel brace.
5. Wheel chocks.
6. Jack assembly. Observe the instructions printed on the jack.
7. Towing eye.
8. Reset tool. See **179, DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE**.

9. There are 4 jacking points on the underside of the vehicle. 2 indented, triangular indicators are provided on each sill cover. These indicate the location for the jack.



Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

See **239, IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE** and **238, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL**.

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure that you read and comply with the following warnings:



Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.



The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of your body beneath the vehicle.



Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced, by half a turn counter-clockwise. Use the wheel chock. See **238, USING WHEEL CHOCKS.**

1. Open the Luggage compartment. See **10, OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT.**
2. Lift the rear edge and then pull to remove the Luggage compartment floor panel.
3. Continually rotate the spare wheel's retaining centre clamp plate counter-clockwise, to release and then continually rotate the top plate of the centre bolt counter-clockwise, to completely remove the retaining plate/bolt assembly. See **238, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL.**
4. Remove the spare wheel and the vehicle's tool kit.
5. Fit the wheel chocks to the relevant wheel. See **238, USING WHEEL CHOCKS.**



Make sure that the wheel chock is fully engaged with the tyre and the road surface.

6. Use the wheel brace to loosen the wheel nuts, by turning half a turn counter-clockwise.

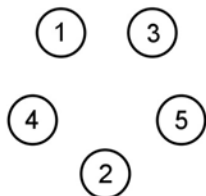


Do not remove the wheel nuts until the vehicle has been safely and securely raised with the jack.

7. Position the jack under the relevant jacking point.
Note: Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.
8. Turn the jack lever clockwise to raise, until the jack head locates into the jacking point. Make sure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the road surface.
9. Raise the vehicle using the jack, with a slow steady operation. Avoid rapid, jerky actions as they may cause the vehicle/jack to become unstable.
10. Stop when the tyre is just clear of the ground.
11. Remove the loosened wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
12. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
13. Fit the spare wheel to the vehicle, by aligning the spare wheel with the vehicle's wheel studs and then slide onto the hub.
14. Refit the wheel nuts and then lightly tighten them in the sequence shown in the illustration. Make sure that the wheel is correctly and evenly fitted to the hub, by checking that each wheel nut is in a similar position.
15. Make sure that the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions, then lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.

Wheel changing

16. With all wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts, in the sequence shown in the illustration, to the correct torque of 125 Nm (92 lb.ft).







E132675

Note: If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, using a suitable blunt tool, knock the centre cap out of the removed wheel. Using hand pressure only, press the centre cap into the newly fitted spare. Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible. See **224, TYRE PRESSURES**.

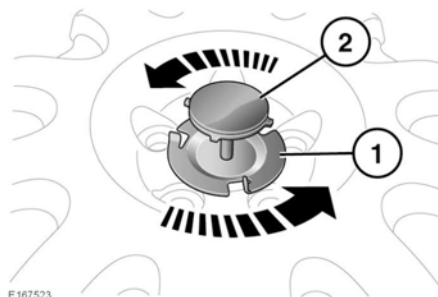
Note: Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

-  **Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.**
-  **Wheels are heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting, lowering, and manoeuvring the wheels.**
-  **Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position, using the retaining bolt.**
-  **Do not stow the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.**



After wheel changing, always secure the tools, chock, jack, and the replaced wheel in their correct stowage positions. Such objects, if not properly stowed, can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.



E167523


Always remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle. Remove the Luggage compartment floor panel:


1. Continually rotate the spare wheel centre clamp plate counter-clockwise, to release.
2. Continually rotate the top plate of centre bolt, counter-clockwise, to completely remove.


Reverse the whole procedure to refit.

Note: Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its stowage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stowed and secured in its place.


USING WHEEL CHOCKS


-  **Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.**

 Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel. Make sure that the wheel chock is fully engaged with the tyre and the road surface.

 If jacking the vehicle on a slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of both wheels on the axle not being raised.

A wheel chock is stowed in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit.


 Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

 Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Note: A code number is stamped on the side of the locking nut. Make sure the number is recorded in the Service book, which is supplied in the vehicle's literature pack. Quote this number if a replacement is required.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

 Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.


 Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is **FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY**.

 Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

 Make sure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.

 Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.

 Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

 The tyre pressure in the temporary-use spare wheel should be 4.2 Bar (60 psi/420 kPa).

RECOVERY METHOD

The method for recovery/transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

- ❗ Make sure that vehicle recovery/transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel and the vehicle is secured correctly.
- ❗ The recovery agent must activate the Transmission park release before recovery commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the Transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.
- ❗ During vehicle recovery, the Smart key must remain inside the vehicle and the ignition must be switched on to make sure that the steering column is unlocked.

Note: *If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected, the steering column must be unlocked first. It is not possible to unlock the steering column with the battery disconnected.*

- ❗ This vehicle should not be towed on all 4 wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

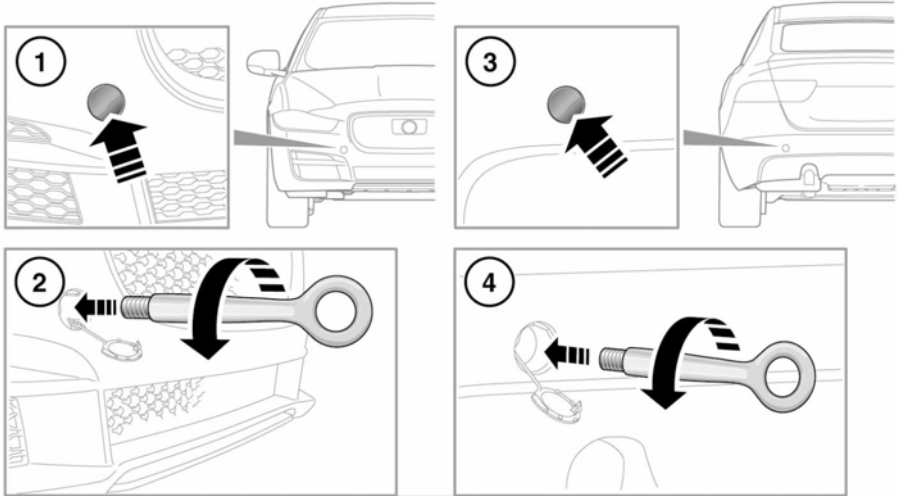
TOWING POINTS



The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.



Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.



E167521

The towing eye is part of the vehicle's tool kit, located under the luggage compartment floor panel. For vehicles supplied with a spare wheel, see **236, WHEEL CHANGING**. For vehicles supplied with tyre repair kit, see **231, TYRE REPAIR KIT**.

The front and rear towing points are fixed and located behind a small access panel in the relevant bumper.

1. Press the lower edge of the front bumper access panel to release the retaining clip and then remove the cover.
2. Locate the towing point through the front bumper and fully screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into the towing point, until secure.

3. Press the lower edge of the rear bumper access panel to release the retaining clip and then remove the cover.
4. Locate the towing point through the rear bumper and fully screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into the towing point.

Note: Pass the vehicle's wheel brace through the towing eye, to act as a lever to help rotate the towing eye until it is completely tight.

Note: Note the orientation of the access cover to aid refitting.

To refit the access panel, align the lug into the recess in the bumper and then lightly press the opposite edge to engage the retaining clip.

Vehicle recovery



Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible, which can result in serious injury.

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING



If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a Dealer/Authorised repairer, or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

Note: The vehicle has an SOS emergency call button and a breakdown call button. See **159**, **INCONTROL PROTECT**.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM

Note: Fitment of the Pedestrian protection system is market and model dependent.

The bumper includes sensors that detect a collision with a pedestrian and includes energy absorbing foam and plastics in its construction, to reduce leg injuries.

During a pedestrian collision, the sensors initiate a bonnet deployment system that releases the bonnet hinge system and raises the rear edge of the bonnet by approximately 130 mm (5.1 inches).

This increases the gap between the bonnet and the components within the engine compartment to create a cushion to mitigate injury caused to the pedestrian.

The Pedestrian protection system is active only when the ignition is on and the vehicle is driven between the speeds of approximately 25 km/h (16 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph).

AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM



Do not attempt to open the bonnet if the Pedestrian protection system has been deployed.

The vehicle must be stopped as soon as it is safe to do so.

The hazard warning lamps will be activated and can only be switched off by pressing the engine **START/STOP** button to switch the engine off and on again.

A warning message **CHECK PEDESTRIAN SYSTEM** will appear in the Message centre and the vehicle should be transported to the nearest Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The vehicle must not be driven when the bonnet has been deployed.

Note: If the warning message **CHECK PEDESTRIAN SYSTEM** appears in the Message centre when the bonnet has not been deployed, the vehicle should be taken to the nearest Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately. It can be driven.

If any significant damage occurs to the front bumper it should be inspected by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering, or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a Dealer/Authorised Repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information, through a direct connection to the vehicle.

After a collision

EVENT DATA RECORDING

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

South Korea only

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

An EDR stores driving information at the moment of accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables to confirm the information stored.

EDR information helps understanding the circumstances of accident more clearly.

LABEL LOCATIONS

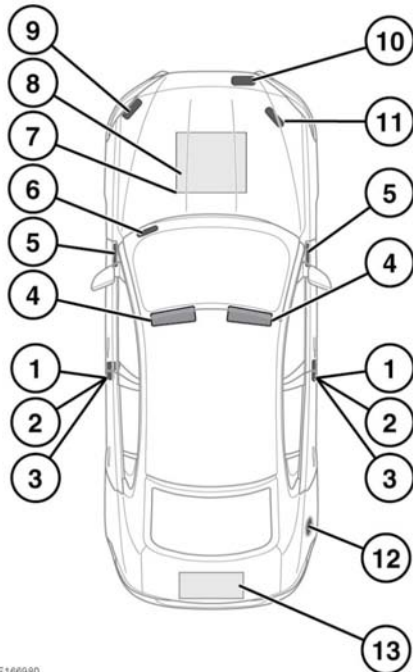


Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is switched on.

Extra information labels may also be found at these locations.



E106980

1. The vehicle weights and the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label: Located at the base of the driver's side B pillar. The vehicle build-date plate (Australian vehicles only) will also be located here. See **47, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The VIN can also be shown in the Message centre via the **Vehicle Info** and **Vehicle VIN** menus.

Note: If you need to communicate with a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.

2. Tyre pressure label: Located at the base of the driver's side B pillar.
3. Airbag warning label: Located midway up the B pillar.
4. Airbag label: Located on the sun visors.
5. Passenger airbag label: Located at the passenger end of the fascia panel.

Vehicle labels

6. VIN: Stamped on a plate, which is visible through the bottom left side of the windscreen.
7. Engine serial number: Stamped into the left side rear of the engine casing.
8. Engine serial number label: Located at the top of the engine. Remove the engine cover for access.
9. Air Conditioning (A/C) label: Located on the left-side bonnet locking platform.
10. Exhaust emissions label: Located on the underside of the bonnet.
11. VIN number: Stamped onto the suspension turret.
12. Fuel specification label: Located on the inside face of the fuel filler flap.
13. Battery warning symbols label: Located on the top face of the vehicle's main battery, underneath the luggage compartment floor panel.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to make sure that your vehicle and its features are used safely. Using the index at the back of this handbook, refer to the relevant topic for more information.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine variant	Number of cylinders	Displacement (cc)	Compression ratio
2.0L Petrol	4	1999	10:1
2.0L Diesel	4	1999	15.5:1
3.0L Petrol	6	2998	10.5:1

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	3.0L petrol	SAE 0W20 meeting specification STJLR.51.5122.
	2.0L petrol	SAE 5W30 meeting specification STJLR.03.5003.
	2.0L Diesel	SAE 0W30 meeting specification STJLR.03.5007.
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel	AdBlue®, meeting ISO standard 22241-1. *
Brake/Clutch fluid	All vehicles	Use Jaguar brake fluid. If unavailable for topping up, use a low viscosity, DOT4 brake fluid that meets the requirements of ISO 4925 class 6.
Washer fluid	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water, as specified on the bottle.
Engine coolant fluid	All vehicles	50% mixture of water and antifreeze specification WSS M97B44 (coloured orange) Extended Life Coolant.
If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.		

Note: * AdBlue® is a registered trademark of Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).



Jaguar recommends Castrol oils.

WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from kg (lbs)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) ¹ kg (lbs)	Maximum front axle load ² kg (lbs)	Maximum rear axle load ² kg (lbs)
3.0L petrol	1 635 (3 605)	2 220 (4 894)	1 100 (2 425)	1 220 (2 690)
2.0L petrol (240 PS)	1 520 (3 351)	2 120 (4 674)	1 040 (2 293)	1 220 (2 690)
2.0L petrol (200 PS)	1 515 (3 340)	2 120 (4 674)	1 040 (2 293)	1 220 (2 690)
2.0L diesel (180 PS) (with manual transmission)	1 490 (3 285)	2 135 (4 707)	1 030 (2 271)	1 220 (2 690)
2.0L diesel (163 PS) (with manual transmission)	1 435 (3 164)	2 100 (4 630)	1 000 (2 205)	1 200 (2 646)
2.0L diesel (180 PS) (with automatic transmission)	1 505 (3 318)	2 135 (4 707)	1 030 (2 271)	1 220 (2 690)
2.0L diesel (163 PS) (with automatic transmission)	1 450 (3 197)	2 100 (4 630)	1 000 (2 205)	1 200 (2 646)

Max. luggage compartment load (all vehicles): 35 kg (77 lbs).

The maximum permitted luggage compartment load can be exceeded, provided the requirements regarding the maximum permissible axle weights and tyre pressures are followed.


¹The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

² The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously, as this will exceed the GVW limit.

For further information on the technical specifications, see the Jaguar website: www.jaguar.com.

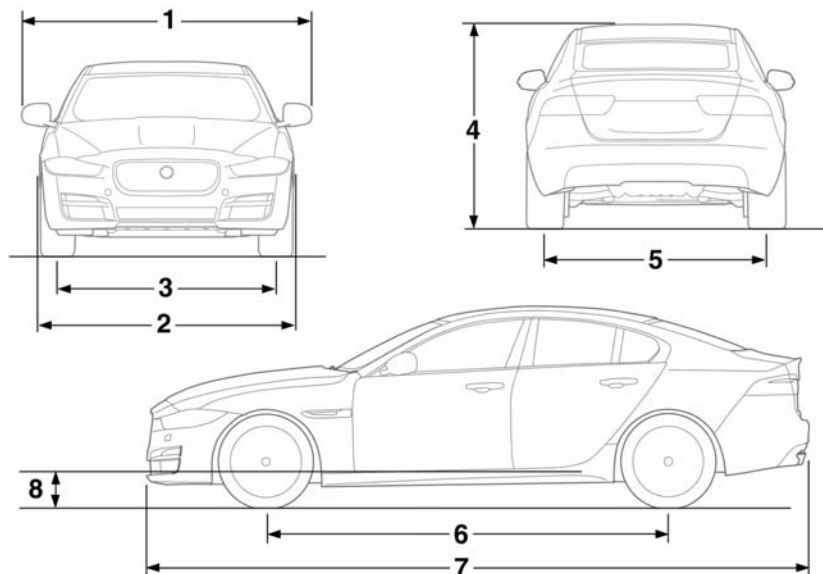


The maximum permitted roof load, including the weight of the roof rack/roof bars, is 75 kg (165 lb). The roof load must be included when calculating the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW).

 Jaguar recommend that only approved accessories are used. If in any doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting a roof rack/roof bars or carrying a roof load.

For towing weights, see **88, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

DIMENSIONS



E 166851

Item	Description	Variant	mm (inches)
1	Width	All vehicles	2 075 (82)
2	Width with mirrors folded	All vehicles	1 967 (77)
3	Track - front	17 inch wheels with a tyre size of 205/55 R17	1 607 (63.3)
		All other 17 inch wheels	1 597 (62.9)
		All 18 inch wheels	1 602 (63.1)
		All 19 inch wheels	1 604 (63.2)
		All 20 inch wheels	1 596 (62.8)
4	Height	All vehicles	1 416 (56)

Technical specifications

Item	Description	Variant	mm (inches)
5	Track - rear	17 inch wheels with a tyre size of 205/55 R17	1 608 (63.3)
		All other 17 inch wheels	1 598 (62.4)
		18 inch wheels with a tyre size of 245/40R18	1 585 (62.1)
		All other 18 inch wheels	1 603 (63.1)
		All 19 inch wheels	1 585 (62.4)
		All 20 inch wheels	1 597 (62.9)
6	Wheelbase	All vehicles	2 835 (111.6)
7	Length	All vehicles	4 686 (185)
8	*Maximum wading depth	All vehicles	150 (6)
	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	All vehicles	11.7 metres (38.4 feet)
*Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).			

CAPACITIES

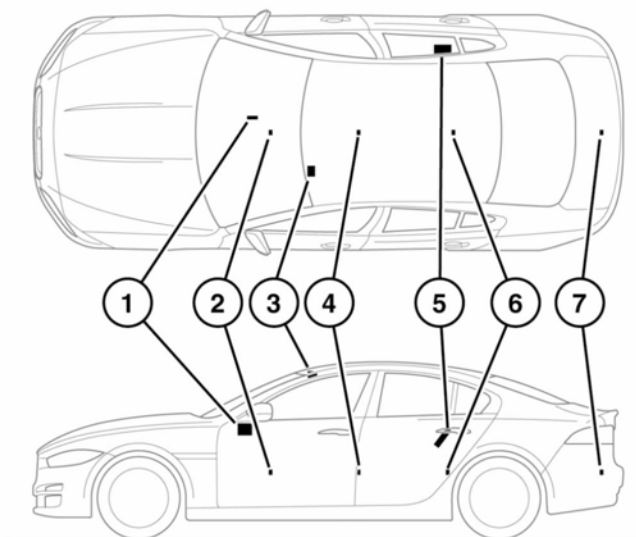
Item	Variant	Capacity
Fuel tank (usable)	3.0L Petrol	65 litres (14.3 gallons)
	2.0L Petrol	65 litres (14.3 gallons)
	2.0L Diesel (163 PS)	47 litres (10.3 gallons)
	2.0L Diesel (180 PS)	56 litres (12.3 gallons)
Engine oil refill and filter change	3.0L Petrol	7.25 litres (12.8 pints)
	2.0L Petrol	5.4 litres (9.5 pints)
	2.0L Diesel	6 litres (10.6 pints)
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel	16 litres (28.2 pints)
Washer reservoir	With headlamp wash	6 litres (10.6 pints)
	Without headlamp wash	4.8 litres (8.5 pints)
Engine cooling system	3.0L Petrol	9.0 litres (15.8 pints)
	2.0L Petrol	6.2 litres (10.9 pints)
	2.0L Diesel with a manual transmission	6.5 litres (11.4 pints)
	2.0L Diesel with an automatic transmission	7.0 litres (12.3 pints)

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks or information displayed in the Message centre, as applicable.

BULB SPECIFICATION

Variant	Bulb description	Specification
Halogen headlamps	High Beam/Daytime running lamp	H15
	Low beam	H7
Halogen headlamps	Front direction indicator	PWY24W
Xenon headlamps	Front direction indicator	PWY24WSV
All vehicles (outboard removable rear lamp)	Rear direction indicator	WY16W
	Reversing lamp	W16W
	Brake lamp	W16W

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



E163432

1. Cabin fascia transmitter.
2. Cabin front floor transmitter.
3. Cabin front roof transmitter.
4. Cabin middle floor transmitter.
5. Keyless vehicle module.
6. Cabin rear floor transmitter.
7. Luggage compartment transmitter.



Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 inches) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

Service	Frequency Band	Max. Output	Antenna Position	Specific Conditions
4m VHF	70 - 85 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2m VHF	142 - 175 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA	380 - 422 MHz	10 W/CW 10 W/PM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
UHF	450 - 470 MHz	10 W/CW	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Bluetooth	2400 - 2483.5 MHz	10 mW	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	5795 - 5815 MHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road Telematics	63 - 64 GHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness, and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY



SiemensVDO Automotive AG, P.O. Box 10 04 43, D-93052 Regensburg

Name: Dagmar Koller
 Department: SV C TS R&D EMC Laboratory
 Tel.: +49(0)941 1790-6999
 Fax: +49(0)941 1790-1369999
 E-Mail: dagmar.koller@siemens.com
 Internet: www.siemensvdo.de
 Doc.: SWW49096.doc
 Date: 03/08/2005

Name: Dagmar Koller
 Department: SV C TS R&D EMC Laboratory
 Tel.: +49(0)941 1790-6999
 Fax: +49(0)941 1790-1369999
 E-Mail: dagmar.koller@siemens.com
 Internet: www.siemensvdo.de
 Doc.: SW278002.doc
 Date: 09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
 Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG
 Siemensstrasse 12
 D-93059 Regensburg
 Germany

Product type designation: SWK4 9096

Intended use: Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems
 The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:
 Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.2:

Applied standard(s):
 EN 60950:2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: Applied standard(s):
 EN 301 489-1,-3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: Applied standard(s):
 EN 300 220-1; V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



Siemens VDO Automotive AG
 Regensburg, 2005-08-03

Jana Böhler
 Dr. Martin Fischer
 Executive Vice President
 Body and Chassis Electronics Operations
 Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG
 Body & Chassis Electronics
 Internal Address: Regensburg
 P.O. Box 10 04 43
 D-93052 Regensburg
 Office Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG
 P.O. Box 10 04 43
 D-93052 Regensburg
 Tel.: +49(0)941 1790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG - Chairman of the Regulatory Board: Ernest G. Hubner, Managing Board: Franz Wehner, Chairman: Andreas Knaul, Vice Chairman: Ingrid Lohrer, Registered Office: München, Commercial Registry: HRB 153227
 Page 1 of 1



SiemensVDO Automotive AG, P.O. Box 10 04 43, D-93052 Regensburg

Name: Dagmar Koller
 Department: SV C TS R&D EMC Laboratory
 Tel.: +49(0)941 1790-6999
 Fax: +49(0)941 1790-1369999
 E-Mail: dagmar.koller@siemens.com
 Internet: www.siemensvdo.de
 Doc.: SWW49096.doc
 Date: 03/08/2005

Name: Dagmar Koller
 Department: SV C TS R&D EMC Laboratory
 Tel.: +49(0)941 1790-6999
 Fax: +49(0)941 1790-1369999
 E-Mail: dagmar.koller@siemens.com
 Internet: www.siemensvdo.de
 Doc.: SW278002.doc
 Date: 09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
 Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Siemensstrasse 12
 D-93059 Regensburg
 Germany

Product type designation: S122780002

Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used for Tire Pressure Monitoring system
 The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:
 Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:

Applied standard(s):
 EN 60950: 2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: Applied standard(s):
 EN 301 489 -1,-3; V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: Applied standard(s):
 EN 300 220 -1; V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



Siemens VDO Automotive AG
 Regensburg, 2005-11-09

Jana Böhler
 Dr. Martin Fischer
 Executive Vice President
 Body and Chassis Electronics Operations
 Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG
 Body & Chassis Electronics
 Internal Address: Regensburg
 P.O. Box 10 04 43
 D-93052 Regensburg
 Office Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG
 P.O. Box 10 04 43
 D-93052 Regensburg
 Tel.: +49(0)941 1790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG - Chairman of the Regulatory Board: Ernest G. Hubner, Managing Board: Franz Wehner, Chairman: Andreas Knaul, Vice Chairman: Ingrid Lohrer, Registered Office: München, Commercial Registry: HRB 153227
 Page 1 of 1

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
Southfield, MI 48034-2148
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500



RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBLLR09A

IC: 3521-JLR09A

Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A

IC: 3521-JBG10A

Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)

Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B

IC: 3521-JBG10B

Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)

Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
Southfield, MI 48034-2148
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500



Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,

FCC ID: KOBJTF0A (Range Rover, Land Rover)

FCC ID: KOBJTF0B (Jaguar)

IC: 3521A-JTF0A (Range Rover, Land Rover)

IC: 3521A-JTF0B (Jaguar)

Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)

Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)

Model #: AW63-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
 Type Designation / FCC ID: KOB/JBG108
 Model Numbers: 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE
 Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
 Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
 ETSI EN 60950
 ETSI EN 300 330
 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
 ASINZS 4288
 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
 Lear Corporation
 21557 Telegraph Road
 Southfield, Michigan 48033
 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.


Signed: 
 Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
 Type Designation / FCC ID: KOB/JBG10A
 Model Numbers: 5E0770357, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440
 Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
 Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
 ETSI EN 60950
 ETSI EN 300 330
 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
 ASINZS 4288
 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
 Lear Corporation
 21557 Telegraph Road
 Southfield, Michigan 48033
 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: 
 Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
 Type Designation: 5E0760127
 Model Numbers: 5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC
 Description / Intended Use: RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
 Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
 ETSI EN 60950
 ETSI EN 300 220
 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
 AS/NZS 4238
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
 Lear Corporation
 21557 Telegraph Road
 Southfield, Michigan 48033
 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
 Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
 Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
 Type Designation: 15K601
 Model Numbers: 5E0850127, 5E0860127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH42-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH42-15K601-BC
 Description / Intended Use: Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob
 Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover
 Applied Standards: CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
 ETSI EN 60950
 ETSI EN 300 220
 ETSI EN 301 489
 IEC EN 60950
 AS/NZS 4238
 Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
 Lear Corporation
 21557 Telegraph Road
 Southfield, Michigan 48033
 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
 Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 26 March 2009

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
 二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
 三、器材名稱：Range Rover / SE0060227
 四、廠牌型號：Range Rover / SE0060227
 五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz；84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
 六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
 八、審核合格標識式樣：

說明：
 1. 請就下列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，如行號書或公司陳列。
 2. 本型式認證合格之他種車輛電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
 3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，檢附機測(備)單並停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
 4. 違章廠商應保留違章產品自日後起銷。
 5. 本型式認證證明及合格標識僅供申請者備查，本證明持有者應於何處電機申請國家取得標章委員會備查後，得授權他人於可能範圍內製成之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：
 1、本器材符合低功率車輛電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
 2、本知照機測由國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
 3、本器材所使用之正式無線電牌型號如下：
 Lear Corporation / N/A

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
 二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
 三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start)
 四、廠牌型號：LEAR / SE0770337
 五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz；61.5dBuV/m(Average)
 六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
 八、審核合格標識式樣：

說明：
 1. 請就下列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，如行號書或公司陳列。
 2. 本型式認證合格之他種車輛電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
 3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，檢附機測(備)單並停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
 4. 違章廠商應保留違章產品自日後起銷。
 5. 本型式認證證明及合格標識僅供申請者備查，本證明持有者應於何處電機申請國家取得標章委員會備查後，得授權他人於可能範圍內製成之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：
 1、本器材符合低功率車輛電機技術規範 LP0002 2.3節之規定。
 2、本知照機測由國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
 3、本器材所使用之正式無線電牌型號如下：
 Lear Corporation / N/A



快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation

二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation

三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)

四、廠牌型號：LEAR / SE0770237

五、發射功率 (電場強度)：125KHz; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)

六、工作頻率：125KHz

98年 06月 02日

CCAH09LP0560T8



七、發證日期：98年 06月 02日

八、審核合格標識式樣：

說明：

- 請就下列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本證明編號，倘有販售或公開陳列。
- 標識式樣除合格之他之射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反他功率電流輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，檢附機(構)型序廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
- 違章廠商應保留該產品自日後陳列。
- 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用標準應取得本證明者，本證明持有入檢附同意書經該國家認證標準委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

- 本器材符合他功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.2.3.4之規定。
- 本廠證明係依照國家通訊傳播委員會審定，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用型號之式樣與廠牌型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A



快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation

二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation

三、器材名稱：Range Rover / SE0850227

四、廠牌型號：LEAR / SE0850227

五、發射功率 (電場強度)：315MHz; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)

六、工作頻率：315MHz

98年 06月 02日

CCAH09LP0551T7



七、發證日期：98年 06月 02日

八、審核合格標識式樣：

說明：

- 請就下列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本證明編號，倘有販售或公開陳列。
- 標識式樣除合格之他之射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反他功率電流輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，檢附機(構)型序廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
- 違章廠商應保留該產品自日後陳列。
- 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用標準應取得本證明者，本證明持有入檢附同意書經該國家認證標準委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

- 本器材符合他功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.2.4.2之規定。
- 本廠證明係依照國家通訊傳播委員會審定，核發本型式認證證明。
- 本器材所使用型號之式樣與廠牌型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A



Continental Automotive Group - Product 100 100 - 100000 Registration

Kobler Christine
ADL 1003.42
Phone +49 (0)41 790-0999
Fax +49 (0)41 790-130699
dgjmar.kobler@continental-corporation.com

Date: July 29, 2008
Your message titled: ...
Our reference: ...
Your reference: ...

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1998/5EC (RATTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany
Product type designation: S180 052 020 A
Intended use: Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1998/5EC, when used for its intended purpose.

- Health and safety pursuant to § 3.1.a:
Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1: 2006
- Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:
Applied standard(s): EN 301 489 -1; V1.0.1 (2005-09)
EN 301 489 -3; V1.0.1 (2002-08)
- Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:
Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1; V2.1.1 (2006-04)
EN 300 220 -2; V2.1.1 (2004-06)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Signature: *Andreas Voss*
Andreas Voss
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Signature: *Norbert Müller*
Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

Continental Automotive Group
Steinbeisstr. 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany, 100 100
Phone +49 941 790-0
Fax +49 941 790-130699
www.continental-corporation.com

Continental AG
Heinrich Heine 66
D-40225 Düsseldorf
Germany, 100 100
Phone +49 211 893-0
Fax +49 211 893-2400
www.continental.com

Quietek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者: Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商: Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱: Jaguar job
四、器材型號: JAGUAR / SE094P217
五、發射功率 (電場強度): 315MHz: 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率: 315MHz

98 年 07 月 01 日

CCCA1091 P0830T1

七、審驗日期: ...
八、審驗合格標樣式樣:

說明:

- 標上所列標樣式樣自製標樣，標樣在申請於器材本證明編號，始行販售或公開陳列。
- 標上所列標樣式樣之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
- 違反低功率電波輻射性管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電機率、電功率者，除依電法規定處罰外，輸送機(構)並得禁止其型式認證證明及型式認證標樣。
- 這些標樣僅供備用該管理辦法第10條所列。
- 本型式認證證明及符合標樣標樣使用僅供備用，不得作為他人申請同型號之電信器材證明時使用。型式認證標樣，自公告日起 30 天內，應掛牌「電信器材證明器材標樣合格標樣或符合性聲明標樣」使用備用標樣。」這本管理辦法。

備註:

- 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 (LPWR03.1.4.2節) 之規定。
- 輸送機標樣經國家通訊傳播委員會審定，該標本型式認證證明。
- 本器材使用固定式天線，應即型號為 Lear Corporation / N/A。



전자통신위원회 WSK-31G-475G-VYD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류
Certification Type
型式등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명
Trade Name or Applicant
LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭
Equipment Name
특정소용허가부가기(대어터 허용부가기)

기본모델명
Basic Model Number
SERB40
파생모델명
Series Model Number

인증번호
Certification No
LER-500940

제조자/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin
Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/미국

형식기호
Type Identification
LAUN2-K0L433.9ZT.A.12SR0.000P1D1
인증연월일
Date of Certification
2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 19일(Date)

기타
Others

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증의임을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.



권과인

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea



전자통신위원회 KCS-9-7219-4T41-1E80

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류
Certification Type
型式등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명
Trade Name or Applicant
LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭
Equipment Name
대어터 허용부가기

기본모델명
Basic Model Number
SERBSP127
파생모델명
Series Model Number
SERB50.5E0960

인증번호
Certification No
LER-5E0RSP127

제조자/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin
Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/미국

형식기호
Type Identification
LAUN2-K0L433.9ZT.A.12SR0.000P1D1
인증연월일
Date of Certification
2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 29일(Date)

기타
Others

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증의임을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.



권과인

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자통신위원회 번호 7N7K-CFNU-SBWF-S01X

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록번호(Type Registration)

인증의 종류
Certification Type
상호 또는 성명
Trade Name or Applicant
기기의 명칭
Equipment Name

LEAR CORPORATION
미국 일렉트로닉 부산기업

기본모델명
Basic Model Number
파생모델명
Series Model Number

5E0770237

인증번호
Certification No

LER-5E0770237

제조자/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin

Leap Yuh Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인

형식기호
Type Identification

LPD-R06L0.1E57A1D

인증일월일
Date of Certification

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

기타
Others

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.



진과연구

Director General of Radio Research Laboratories
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

2009년 9월 4일 (2009.09.04)



전자통신위원회 번호 JVC5-AS1Q-8R4C-10BT

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

형식등록번호(Type Registration)

인증의 종류
Certification Type
상호 또는 성명
Trade Name or Applicant
기기의 명칭
Equipment Name

LEAR CORPORATION
미국 일렉트로닉 부산기업

기본모델명
Basic Model Number
파생모델명
Series Model Number

5E0770237

5E0770237

인증번호
Certification No

LER-5E0770237

제조자/제조국가
Manufacturer/Country of Origin

Leap Yuh Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인

형식기호
Type Identification

LPD-R06L0.1E57A1D

인증일월일
Date of Certification

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

기타
Others

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.



진과연구

Director General of Radio Research Laboratories
Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

2009년 9월 04일 (2009.09.04)





Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
 Postal Faxes: 164 Kalkbrenner Street, Sandton, 2146
 Private Bag 110002, Soweto, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2008292

The Authority, in the exercise of its powers conferred upon it by sections 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations and currently in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA
 Street Address : Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton
 Postal Number : 012 842 3274
 Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005
 Registration Number : 200102726807

Description of Apparatus

Category : Remote Function Actuator (RFA)
 Model : K0JUB010B
 Frequency Range : 40.7 to 40.7 MHz
 ITU Emission Code : 12KGD
 Modulation : BPSK
 Channel Spacing : +37.7 DspA/m @ 3m
 Features : -

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.


 Prof. JCV van Rooyen
 Senior Engineer: Engineering & Technology

03 JUN 2008

P. Msimbi (Chairperson), Mr. Buys, T.V. Mahabane, R. Ntshu, B.B. Ntsheni, P.K. Sibanda, P.K. Misi Sook-Awa
 Prof. JCV van Rooyen SC, IMZ Zolani (Councilors), BK Boriana (CEO)



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
 Postal Faxes: 164 Kalkbrenner Street, Sandton, 2146
 Private Bag 110002, Soweto, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2008293

The Authority, in the exercise of its powers conferred upon it by sections 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations and currently in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name : Jaguar Land Rover SA
 Street Address : Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton
 Postal Number : 012 842 3274
 Facsimile Number : 012 845 1005
 Registration Number : 200102726807

Description of Apparatus

Category : Remote Function Actuator (RFA)
 Model : K0JUB010A
 Frequency Range : 40.7 to 40.7 MHz
 ITU Emission Code : 12KGD
 Modulation : BPSK
 Channel Spacing : +40.7 DspA/m @ 3m
 Features : -

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.


 Prof. JCV van Rooyen
 Senior Engineer: Engineering & Technology

03 JUN 2008

P. Msimbi (Chairperson), Mr. Buys, T.V. Mahabane, R. Ntshu, B.B. Ntsheni, P.K. Sibanda, P.K. Misi Sook-Awa
 Prof. JCV van Rooyen SC, IMZ Zolani (Councilors), BK Boriana (CEO)



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
 Postal Fom: 164 Mafikeng Street, Sandton
 Private Bag 110002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-20060305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35(1) of the Electronic Communications Act 66 of 2001, has issued this certificate of approval for the radio equipment type approval certificate number 20060305 (see overleaf). It hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name : **Jaguar Lead Rover SA**
 Street Address : **Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
 Telephone Number : **012 842 3274**
 Facsimile Number : **012 845 1008**
 Registration Number : **200102720897**

Description of Apparatus

Category : **Key Fob Transmitter**
 Model : **156/601**
 Frequency Range : **433.00 MHz**
 Modulation : **ASK/FSK**
 Power Output : **14.6 dBm**
 Channel Spacing : **...**
 Features : **...**

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philimon Molefe
Philimon Molefe
 Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2008

P. Molefe (Chairperson), Ms B.M. Tlou (Member), R. Nkomo (Member), P. Schabas (Member), D. M.M. Sookhoo (Member),
 P. Molefe (Chairperson), Ms B.M. Tlou (Member), R. Nkomo (Member), P. Schabas (Member), D. M.M. Sookhoo (Member)



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
 Postal Fom: 164 Mafikeng Street, Sandton
 Private Bag 110002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-20060304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35(1) of the Electronic Communications Act 66 of 2001, has issued this certificate of approval for the radio equipment type approval certificate number 20060304 (see overleaf). It hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name : **Jaguar Lead Rover SA**
 Street Address : **Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
 Telephone Number : **012 842 3274**
 Facsimile Number : **012 845 1008**
 Registration Number : **200102720897**

Description of Apparatus

Category : **Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver**
 Model : **SE6760127**
 Frequency Range : **433.00 – 434.78 MHz**
 Modulation : **FSK/ASK**
 Power Output : **4.00 dBm**
 Channel Spacing : **...**
 Features : **...**

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philimon Molefe
Philimon Molefe
 Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2008

P. Molefe (Chairperson), Ms B.M. Tlou (Member), R. Nkomo (Member), P. Schabas (Member), D. M.M. Sookhoo (Member),
 P. Molefe (Chairperson), Ms B.M. Tlou (Member), R. Nkomo (Member), P. Schabas (Member), D. M.M. Sookhoo (Member)



ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
25-1 Yamanashi-cho, Yamanashi-shi, Yamanashi Prefecture, Japan
Phone: (81) 248-234-4111 Fax: (81) 248-234-8220

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, Alpine Electronics, Inc. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the equipment of the above description is in conformity with the requirements of the European Council Directive of 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed hereafter.

Product : Bluetooth Module
Model/ Type Number : IAM 2.1 BT FNB EU
Directive and Standards used : Radio: EN 300 328 V1.1.1: 200610
EMC: EN 301 489-1 V1.1.1: 2006-04
EN 301 489-1 V1.1.1: 2006-04
ISO 7637-2: 2004
Safety: IEC 60948 E4.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2009
EN 60948: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006

Year of affixing CE marking : 2009

Signature : *S. Aizawa*
Name : Shinichi Aizawa
Date : November 12, 2009



Label to be used on the following

products only

- citizen band radio equipment
- cellular equipment
- trunk radio equipment
- spread spectrum devices
- leased channel radio equipment
- cordless telephone
- wireless security devices
- wireless microphone
- radio-control equipment
- medical & biology telemetry equipment

REPUBLICA FEDERATIVA DO BRASIL
AGÊNCIA NACIONAL DE TELECOMUNICAÇÕES
ANATEL

Certificado de Homologação
(regulamentado)

Nº **0385-10-4787**
Emissão: **12/08/2010**
Validade: **Indefinida**

Fornecedor
LEAR DO BRASIL, INC COM INTERIORES AUTOMOTIVOS LTDA
AV. JOSEMAR EVITO MOREIRA, SN, BARRIO DO GRAAIA
13295-000 - CASCAVEL - SP

Fabricante
LEAR CORPORATION HOLDING JAPAN S.L.L. ELECTRICAL
SUNRISE PARK INDUSTRIAL CENTRE (JALAMARTI), PUSHER
VALLE TABARRONA - ESPANA

Objeto
Este documento homologa, nos termos do Regulamento para Certificação e Homologação de Produtos para Telecomunicações, emitido pela Resolução Anatel nº 242, de 30 de novembro de 2010, o Certificado de Conformidade nº 0385/10, emitido pelo ODC - IBRACE, em relação ao dispositivo de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre, denominado "Sistema de Comunicação por Radiotelecomunicações - Categoria II", fabricado e comercializado em território brasileiro sob o nome de marca "KOBOLITHA".

Modo(s)
KOBOLITHA

Serviço/Aplicação
Radiotelecomunicações de Rádiofixa Fixa

Características Técnicas Básicas

Frequências Operativas		Módulo de Comunicação		Módulo de Rede	
Faixa	Canal	Modo	Modo	Modo	Modo
870-960	217,179	TDMA	TDMA	ISDN	ISDN

Observações
Na instalação de produto devem ser observadas as condições de uso conforme estabelecido no Regulamento sobre Equipamentos de Radiotelecomunicações de Rádiofixa Fixa.

Condições obrigatórias de funcionamento do produto no Brasil para obtenção e atualização do produto homologado, nos termos da art. 29 do Regulamento sobre Equipamentos de Radiotelecomunicações de Rádiofixa Fixa, são as seguintes: (i) o produto deve ser utilizado somente com o sistema de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre homologado e substituído integralmente por outro sistema de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre homologado, quando este for substituído por outro sistema de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre homologado.

As informações constantes neste certificado de homologação podem ser verificadas no SUCCH - Sistema de Gestão de Homologações, disponível no portal de Anatel (www.anatel.gov.br).

Ministério de Estado
Governo Central de Comunicação e
Engenharia do Espaço

REPUBLICA FEDERATIVA DO BRASIL
AGÊNCIA NACIONAL DE TELECOMUNICAÇÕES
ANATEL

Certificado de Homologação
(regulamentado)

Nº **0385-10-4787**
Emissão: **12/08/2010**
Validade: **Indefinida**

Fornecedor
LEAR DO BRASIL, INC COM INTERIORES AUTOMOTIVOS LTDA
AV. JOSEMAR EVITO MOREIRA, SN, BARRIO DO GRAAIA
13295-000 - CASCAVEL - SP

Fabricante
LEAR AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS AND ELECTRICAL PRODUCT
BROADWAY ROAD NO. 58 8 BALKINNET FULBORN WEST DISTRICT
MUNSTER - GERMANY

Objeto
Este documento homologa, nos termos do Regulamento para Certificação e Homologação de Produtos para Telecomunicações, emitido pela Resolução Anatel nº 242, de 30 de novembro de 2010, o Certificado de Conformidade nº 0385/10, emitido pelo ODC - IBRACE, em relação ao dispositivo de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre, denominado "Sistema de Comunicação por Radiotelecomunicações - Categoria II", fabricado e comercializado em território brasileiro sob o nome de marca "KOBOLITHA".

Modo(s)
KOBOLITHA

Serviço/Aplicação
Radiotelecomunicações de Rádiofixa Fixa

Características Técnicas Básicas

Frequências Operativas		Módulo de Comunicação		Módulo de Rede	
Faixa	Canal	Modo	Modo	Modo	Modo
870-960	217,179	TDMA	TDMA	ISDN	ISDN

Observações
Na instalação de produto devem ser observadas as condições de uso conforme estabelecido no Regulamento sobre Equipamentos de Radiotelecomunicações de Rádiofixa Fixa.

Condições obrigatórias de funcionamento do produto no Brasil para obtenção e atualização do produto homologado, nos termos da art. 29 do Regulamento sobre Equipamentos de Radiotelecomunicações de Rádiofixa Fixa, são as seguintes: (i) o produto deve ser utilizado somente com o sistema de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre homologado e substituído integralmente por outro sistema de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre homologado, quando este for substituído por outro sistema de comunicação móvel de acesso à rede pública terrestre homologado.

As informações constantes neste certificado de homologação podem ser verificadas no SUCCH - Sistema de Gestão de Homologações, disponível no portal de Anatel (www.anatel.gov.br).

Ministério de Estado
Governo Central de Comunicação e
Engenharia do Espaço

- A**
- About this handbook.....2
 - Accessories.....183
 - tow ball.....95
 - Adaptive cruise control.....128
 - ACC gap change.....130
 - automatic switch-off.....131
 - driving hints.....131
 - follow mode.....129
 - forward alert.....133
 - intelligent emergency braking.....134
 - malfunction.....132
 - queue assist.....130
 - radar detection beam issues.....132
 - resume follow mode.....131
 - resume set speed.....131
 - set speed and follow mode override.....130
 - Adaptive dynamics.....110
 - Adaptive front lighting system.....58
 - warning lamp.....53
 - Adaptive headlamps.....58
 - AdBlue®.....176
 - AEB.....112
 - After a collision
 - pedestrian protection system.....243
 - Age degradation (tyres).....226
 - Airbags
 - cover cleaning.....202
 - curtain.....44
 - deployment.....41, 43
 - disability modifications.....45
 - disabling.....42
 - front.....43
 - locations.....40
 - maintenance.....183
 - obstruction.....41
 - service information.....44
 - side.....44
 - warning lamp.....44, 53
 - Air conditioning
 - automatic recirculation.....80
 - front.....79
 - remote control batteries.....84
 - using the remote control.....83
 - Air quality sensor.....81
 - Alarm.....15, 184
 - automatic relocking and arming.....16
 - battery backed sounder.....15
 - deactivating.....15
 - intrusion sensor.....16
 - passive arming.....16
 - perimeter.....15
 - security sensor fault.....16
 - tilt sensor.....16
 - All surface progress control.....137–138
 - AM/FM radio controls.....145
 - Anchor points
 - ISOFIX and i-Size.....36
 - Anchor points (luggage).....87
 - Anti-lock braking system
 - emergency stop signal.....113
 - Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....53
 - Anti-theft system.....184
 - Anti-trap protection
 - sunroof.....75
 - windows.....74
 - Arduous driving conditions.....185
 - Audio
 - AM/FM radio controls.....145
 - connecting a media device.....148
 - connecting multiple devices.....151
 - DAB radio controls.....147
 - licensing.....151
 - media controls.....143
 - pairing and connecting a device.....151
 - playing a portable device.....151
 - portable media connections.....148
 - portable media controls.....150
 - settings.....144
 - sound settings.....144
 - Audio settings.....144
 - Auto lamps
 - wiper detection.....58
 - Automatic locking.....9, 16
 - Automatic recirculation.....80

- Automatic speed limiter
 - warning lamp.....53
 - Automatic switch off of ACC.....131
 - Automatic transmission.....104
 - gear selector.....105
 - gear shift warning lamp.....54
 - shift paddles.....106
 - temporary manual selection.....106
 - Autonomous emergency braking.....112
 - Auxiliary device connection.....148, 151
 - Auxiliary heater.....81
 - Auxiliary power sockets.....86
- B**
- Battery
 - boost starting.....212
 - charging.....213
 - connecting jump leads.....210
 - monitoring system.....210
 - replacing.....213
 - using a starting aid.....212
 - warning lamp.....52
 - warning symbols.....210
 - Battery backed sounder.....15
 - Blinds
 - rear window.....73
 - Blind spot monitor
 - closing vehicle sensing.....68
 - displayed messages.....69
 - notification of overtaking vehicle.....67
 - sensor blockage.....69
 - Bluetooth
 - changing the connected phone or device.....156
 - deleting the connected phone.....156
 - general information.....155
 - pairing and connecting a device.....151
 - pairing a wireless technology device.....155
 - phone compatibility.....155
 - telephone
 - overview.....157
 - safety.....158
 - Bonnet
 - closing.....186
 - opening.....186
 - Booster seats for larger children.....36
 - Boost starting.....212
 - Brakes
 - ABS warning lamp.....53
 - automatic braking.....112
 - control with ABS.....111
 - electronic brake force distribution.....111
 - emergency assist.....133
 - emergency brake assist.....111
 - emergency stop signal.....113
 - fluid
 - specification.....208
 - top up.....208
 - fluid level.....207
 - handbrake.....113
 - hill start assist.....114
 - important information.....111
 - parking brake warning lamp.....52
 - steep slope control.....111
 - warning lamp (red).....51
 - warning lamp (yellow).....52
 - Breakdown assistance
 - InControl link.....159
 - Bulbs
 - brake lamp.....197
 - changing a bulb.....187
 - direction indicator.....197
 - front direction indicator.....192
 - headlamp replacement.....188, 192
 - rear lamp.....197
 - rear lamps.....194
 - replacement
 - brake lamp.....197
 - front direction indicator.....192
 - reversing lamp.....197
 - specification.....254
- C**
- Call volume.....158
 - Cameras
 - hitch guidance.....89
 - proximity view.....124
 - rear camera.....117, 119

Index

- reverse traffic detection.....118
- touch screen menu.....124
- Capacities.....253
 - engine oil.....253
 - fuel tank.....253
 - washer reservoir.....253
- Car-wash.....200
- Changing a bulb.....187
- Changing a fuse.....215
- Changing a wheel
 - locking wheel nuts.....239
 - recommended process.....236
 - safety warnings.....235
 - spare wheel.....238
 - temporary spare wheel.....238
- Changing the connected phone or device...156
- Charging the vehicle battery.....213
- Chassis number.....245
- Child safety
 - booster seats.....36
 - check list.....34
 - child seats.....33
 - ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points.....36
 - larger children on booster seats.....36
 - lock and window inhibitor.....33
 - positioning.....35
 - recommended child seats.....36
 - tether straps.....38
- Cleaning
 - airbag covers.....202
 - alloy wheels.....200
 - automatic car wash.....200
 - engine compartment.....200
 - exterior.....200
 - paintwork.....200
 - glass.....200
 - interior.....201–202
 - leather.....201
 - park assist sensors.....200
 - parking aids sensors.....200
 - polishing.....201
 - rear screen.....201
 - removing grease.....201
 - removing stains.....202
 - removing tar.....201
 - sensors and cameras.....200
 - sunroof.....201
 - using a car-wash.....200
 - washer jets.....198
- Climate control
 - automatic recirculation.....80
 - front.....79
 - fuel burning heater.....81
 - heated and cooled seats.....81
 - heated seats.....81
 - remote control batteries.....84
 - timed climate.....82
 - timed climate remote controls.....84
 - using the remote control.....83
- Climate seats.....81
- Climate settings.....80
- Clock.....46
- Closing the bonnet.....186
- Closing vehicle sensing.....68
- Clutch
 - fluid level.....207
- Cold weather driving
 - diesel particulate filter (DPF).....185
- Commandshift.....104, 106
- Compatibility of phones.....155
- Condensation (headlamps).....58
- Conformity declarations.....257
- Connecting a media device.....148
- Connecting a phone or device.....155
- Connecting jump leads.....210
- Connecting multiple portable media devices.....151
- Controls
 - touch screen.....76
- Convenience mode.....9
- Coolant
 - checking the level.....206
 - specification.....207
 - top up.....207
- Courtesy delay.....57
- Covers
 - refitting.....187
 - removal.....187

- Critical warning messages.....51
- Cruise control.....127
- ACC driving hints.....131
 - ACC emergency braking.....134
 - ACC follow mode.....129
 - ACC gap change.....130
 - ACC radar detection beam issues.....132
 - ACC set speed and follow mode
override.....130
 - adaptive cruise control.....128
 - adaptive cruise control malfunction.....132
 - follow mode.....129
 - forward alert in ACC.....133
 - resume ACC follow mode.....131
 - resume ACC set speed.....131
 - using ACC.....128
 - warning lamp.....54
- D**
- DAB radio.....147
- Data recording.....243–244
- Daytime running lamps.....57
- Declarations of conformity.....257
- DEF.....176
- Deleting the connected phone or device.....156
- Deselecting valet mode.....78
- Detachable tow ball.....91
- removing.....92
- Detection beam issues.....132
- Device pairing and connecting.....155
- Diesel
- filler flap.....179
 - fuel.....175
 - glow plugs
 - warning lamp.....52
 - misfuel device.....179
 - sulphur content.....175
 - water in fuel.....177
- Diesel engines.....177
- Diesel particulate filter (DPF).....184
- cold weather driving.....185
 - driving short distances.....185
 - sulphur content.....175
- Dimensions.....251
- Direction indicators.....56
- warning lamp.....54
- Disability modifications
- airbags.....45
- Disabling the passenger air bag.....42
- Door mirrors.....65
- blind spot monitor.....67
 - closing vehicle sensing.....68
 - sensors.....69
- Door transceiver
- assistance.....72
 - erase all programming.....72
 - programming.....71
 - programming a single button.....72
 - programming the garage door opener.....71
- Double locking.....13
- full alarm.....15
- Downloading from the internet
- InControl connection.....162
- Drive away locking.....9
- Driver exit
- deactivating intelligent stop/start.....103
- Driving
- ACC automatic switch-off.....131
 - ACC driving hints.....131
 - ACC emergency braking.....134
 - ACC follow mode.....129
 - ACC forward alert.....133
 - ACC gap change.....130
 - ACC malfunction.....132
 - ACC queue assist.....130
 - ACC radar detection beam issues.....132
 - ACC set speed and follow mode
override.....130
 - activating intelligent stop/start.....102
 - adaptive cruise control.....128
 - after a collision.....243
 - after deployment of the pedestrian protection
system.....243
 - arduous conditions.....185
 - automatic braking.....112
 - automatic speed limiter.....126
 - before starting.....243
 - blind spot monitor.....67

- closing vehicle sensing.....68
 - blind spot monitor messages.....69
 - brake control with ABS.....111
 - brakes important information.....111
 - daily checks.....184
 - deactivating intelligent stop/start.....102
 - DSC active warning lamp.....53
 - electronic brake force distribution.....111
 - emergency brake assist.....111
 - emergency stop signal.....113
 - forward alert.....133
 - forward alert warning lamp.....55
 - gear shift warning lamp.....54
 - hill start assist.....114
 - lane departure warning lamp (green).....54
 - lane departure warning lamp (red).....52
 - low oil pressure.....51
 - park assist limitations.....122
 - park assist troubleshooting.....123
 - progress control settings.....138
 - progress control system overview.....137
 - rain sensor.....63
 - resume ACC follow mode.....131
 - resume ACC set speed.....131
 - running-in.....183
 - selecting park assist.....121
 - sitting correctly.....21
 - steep slope control with ABS.....111
 - using ACC.....128
 - using cruise control.....127
 - using the progress control system.....137
 - weekly checks.....184
- Driving abroad
 - beam pattern.....58
 - headlamps.....58
- Driving aids
 - lane departure warning.....141
 - traffic sign recognition.....140
- Driving modes.....135
 - dynamic program.....135
 - standard.....135
 - winter.....136
- Driving position memory
 - recalling a position.....21
- Driving short distances
 - diesel particulate filter (DPF).....185
- Dynamic program.....135
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).....108
 - DSC active warning lamp.....53
 - DSC off warning lamp.....53
 - switching between DSC and tracDSC.....108
 - switching off.....108
 - switching on.....109
- E**
- Eco program
 - fuel saving.....135
- Electric parking brake.....113
- Electric seats.....18
 - recalling a memory position.....21
- Electric windows
 - operation.....73
- Electronic brake force distribution.....111
- Electronic data.....244
- Email
 - InControl connection.....162
- Emergency (navigation).....169
- Emergency brake assist.....111, 133
- Emergency call
 - InControl link.....159
- Emergency key locking.....17
- Emergency stop signal.....113
 - hazard warning lamps.....113
- Engine
 - antifreeze level.....206
 - compartment opening.....186
 - coolant level.....206
 - diesel.....177
 - diesel fuel.....175
 - diesel particulate filter (DPF).....184
 - oil level.....204
 - petrol fuels.....174
 - running-in.....183
 - specifications.....247
 - starting
 - keyless start backup.....101
 - switching off.....100
- Engine/transmission warning lamp.....52

- Engine compartment
 - fluid filler locations.....203
- Engine compartment cleaning.....200
- Engine covers
 - refitting.....187
 - removal.....187
- Engine oil
 - capacity.....253
- Engine starting.....100
- Engine temperature warning lamp.....51
- Entering the vehicle
 - entry and exit mode.....28
 - global opening.....9
 - keyless entry.....8
 - luggage compartment.....10
 - passive entry.....8
 - tailgate operation.....10
 - unlocking mode.....8
- Ethanol.....174
- Event data recording.....244
- Exhaust fluid
 - diesel.....176
- Exiting the vehicle
 - arming the alarm.....17
 - closing mislock.....14
 - door locks and release levers.....13
 - double locking.....13
 - emergency locking.....17
 - full alarm.....15
 - global closing.....14
 - interior locks.....13
 - keyless locking.....14
 - lock confirmation.....14
 - passive arming.....16
 - perimeter alarm.....15
 - single locking.....13
- Exterior cleaning.....200
- Exterior lamps
 - bulb changing.....187
 - bulb specification.....254
- Exterior mirrors
 - electric.....65
 - manual.....65
 - mirror dip when reversing.....66
- External temperature
 - warning lamp.....53
- Extra features.....78
- F**
- Flat spots.....226
- Fluids
 - brake
 - check.....207
 - specification.....208
 - top up.....208
 - capacities.....253
 - clutch check.....207
 - coolant
 - specification.....207
 - top up.....207
 - engine oil
 - check.....204
 - filler locations.....203
 - oil
 - top up.....205
 - specifications.....248
 - washer fluid.....209
 - check.....209
 - specification.....209
- Fog lamps
 - warning lamps
 - rear.....53
- Follow
 - override.....130
- Follow mode
 - entering.....129
 - gap change.....130
 - gap changing.....130
 - override.....131
 - resume.....131
- Forward alert.....133
- Forward alert in ACC
 - object detection.....133
- Forward alert warning lamp.....55
- Front airbags.....43
- Front climate control.....79
 - automatic recirculation.....80
- Front parking aids.....115

- system fault.....117
- Front wipers
 - winter park position.....198
- Fuel and refuelling.....179
 - consumption.....181
 - diesel.....175
 - diesel fuel sulphur content.....175
 - ethanol.....174
 - filler flap.....179
 - fuel filler flap.....178
 - methanol.....175
 - methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE).....175
 - misfuel device.....179
 - octane rating.....174
 - petrol.....174
 - running out.....177
 - safety precautions.....174
 - tank capacity.....180
 - water in fuel.....177
- Fuel burning heater.....81
- Fuel can.....177
- Fuel consumption.....181
 - combined cycles.....182
 - extra-urban cycle.....181
 - urban cycle.....181
- Fuel filler flap.....178
- Fuel gauge.....46
- Fuel saving
 - eco program.....135
- Fuel system.....186
- Fuel tank
 - capacity.....253
- Fuses
 - changing.....215
 - engine compartment fuse box.....215
 - locations.....214
 - luggage compartment fuse box.....219
 - passenger compartment fuse box.....218
- G**
- Garage door opener.....71
 - assistance.....72
 - erase all programming.....72
 - programming.....71
 - programming a single button.....72
- Garage door transceiver.....71
- Gearbox
 - automatic.....104
 - gear shift warning lamp.....54
 - limp home mode.....106
 - manual.....106
- Glass cleaning.....200
- Global closing.....14
- Global opening.....9
- Glow plugs
 - warning lamp.....52
- H**
- Handbook symbols.....2
- Handbrake.....113
- Hands free parking.....120
 - park assist limitations.....122
 - park assist troubleshooting.....123
 - selecting park assist.....121
- Hazard warning lamps
 - emergency stop signal.....113
- Headlamps.....56
 - adaptive.....58
 - beam pattern.....58
 - bulb changing.....187
 - bulb replacement.....188, 192
 - bulb specification.....254
 - condensation.....58
 - courtesy delay.....57
 - daytime running lamps.....57
 - driving abroad.....58
 - high beam assist.....57
 - high beam assist warning lamp.....54
 - high beam warning lamp.....54
 - levelling.....58
 - warning lamp (AFS).....53
 - washers.....64
 - xenon.....188
- Head restraints
 - front seats.....24
 - rear seats.....24
- Head up display.....49
- Heated seats.....81

Heated steering wheel.....	28	portable media	
Heating and ventilation.....	79	connections.....	148
air quality sensor.....	81	controls.....	150
automatic recirculation.....	80	radio controls.....	145, 147
front.....	79	settings.....	144
fuel burning heater.....	81	sound settings.....	144
heated and cooled seats.....	81	touch screen	
heated seats.....	81	care.....	77
remote control batteries.....	84	extra features.....	78
timed climate.....	82	operating.....	77
timed climate remote controls.....	84	Instrument panel.....	46, 202
using the remote control.....	83	display units.....	49
Heating and ventilation settings.....	80	fuel range.....	49
High beam assist.....	57	head up display.....	49
Hill start assist.....	114	lamp test.....	51
Hitch guidance cameras.....	89	menu.....	47
Homelink.....	71	driving features.....	47
assistance.....	72	instrument display.....	47
erase all programming.....	72	trip computer.....	47
programming.....	71	vehicle set-up.....	47
programming a single button.....	72	recommended tyre pressures.....	230
programming the garage door opener.....	71	trip computer.....	48
I		trip distance.....	49
Ignition		tyre pressure check.....	229
rolling re-start.....	101	warning lamps.....	51
switching on.....	100	warning messages.....	47
InControl		Intelligent emergency braking	
apps.....	163	ACC.....	134
overview.....	159	Intelligent stop/start	
protect.....	159	activating.....	102
remote premium.....	160	deactivating.....	102–103
secure.....	161	Intelligent stop/start warning lamp.....	54
wi-fi connection.....	162	Interior cleaning.....	201–202
Indicators warning lamp.....	54	airbag covers.....	202
Information messages.....	47, 51	Interior lamps.....	60
Infotainment		ambient lighting.....	61
connecting a media device.....	148	bulb changing.....	187
connecting multiple devices.....	151	bulb specification.....	254
licensing.....	151	intensity.....	61
media controls.....	143	stealth mode.....	61
pairing and connecting a device.....	151	types.....	60
playing a portable device.....	151	Interior locking.....	13
		Internet browsing	
		InControl connection.....	162

- Introduction
 - instructional videos.....3
- Intrusion sensor.....16
- ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points.....36
- J**
- Jump starting
 - connecting a starting aid.....212
 - connecting jump leads.....210
- K**
- Keyless entry.....8
- Keyless locking.....14
- L**
- Label locations.....245
- Lamps.....56
 - auto lamps wiper detection.....58
 - bulb changing.....187
 - bulb specification.....254
 - condensation.....58
 - rear lamp removal.....194
 - test.....51
 - TPMS warning lamp.....54
 - warning lamps.....51
 - xenon headlamps.....188
- Lane departure warning.....141
- Lane departure warning lamp (green).....54
- Lane departure warning lamp (red).....52
- Leather cleaning.....201
- Levelling
 - headlamps.....58
- License
 - navigation.....170
- Lighting
 - ambient lighting.....61
 - interior lamps intensity.....61
 - interior lamps locations.....60
 - stealth mode.....61
- Limp home mode.....106
- Load securing.....87
- Locking
 - automatic relocking.....16
 - confirmation.....14
 - door locks and release levers.....13
 - double locking.....13
 - drive away.....9
 - emergency locking.....17
 - global closing.....14
 - in an emergency.....17
 - keyless.....14
 - mislock.....14
 - security sensor fault.....16
 - single.....13
 - with the emergency key.....17
- Locking wheel nuts.....239
- Low fuel warning lamp.....53
- Low oil pressure warning lamp.....51
- Lubricants specifications.....248
- Luggage compartment
 - anchor points.....87
- M**
- Maintenance
 - arduous driving conditions.....185
 - brake fluid level.....207
 - bulb changing.....187
 - rear lamp removal.....194
 - bulb specification.....254
 - capacities.....253
 - changing a fuse.....215
 - checking tyre pressure after a repair.....233
 - cleaning
 - alloy wheels.....200
 - exterior.....200
 - glass.....200
 - interior.....201–202
 - leather.....201
 - rear screen.....201
 - sensors and cameras.....200
 - the engine compartment.....200
 - closing the bonnet.....186
 - clutch fluid level.....207
 - daily checks.....184
 - diesel particulate filter (DPF).....184
 - engine compartment fuse box.....215
 - engine coolant level.....206

engine oil level.....	204
fuel system.....	186
fuse box (passenger compartment).....	218
jump starting.....	212
label locations.....	245
lubricants and fluid specifications.....	248
luggage compartment fuse box.....	219
oil top up.....	205
paintwork repair.....	200
polishing.....	201
removing grease and tar.....	201
removing stains.....	202
running-in.....	183
smart key battery.....	12
sunroof wind deflector.....	201
tyre repair kit.....	231
tyre repair procedure.....	232
using a starting aid.....	212
washer fluid level.....	209
weekly checks.....	184
Manual seats.....	20
Map screen	
navigation system.....	167
Media controls.....	143
Message centre display units.....	49
Methanol.....	175
Minor paintwork repairs.....	200
Mirrors	
blind spot monitor.....	67
closing vehicle sensing.....	68
sensors.....	69
dip when reversing.....	66
exterior mirrors.....	65
Misfuel device.....	179
Modes	
driving.....	135
standard.....	135
winter.....	136
Mpg.....	181

N

Navigation	
emergency contacts.....	169
license.....	170

map screen.....	167
menu.....	166
operating.....	164
overview.....	164
points of interest (POI).....	169
SD card.....	164
set a selected destination.....	169
settings.....	167
guidance.....	168
soft key icons.....	170
terms and conditions.....	170
voice commands.....	153
where to?.....	168

O

Obstructing the airbag.....	41
Occupant safety	
child seat tether straps.....	38
recommended child seats.....	36
seat belt checks.....	31
seat belt pre-tensioners.....	32
seat belt reminder warning.....	31
seat belt safety.....	30
seat belts warning lamp.....	52
using seat belts.....	29
Octane rating.....	174
petrol.....	174
Oil	
engine oil specification.....	205
filler locations.....	203
specification.....	248
top up.....	205
used engine oil.....	186
Opening the bonnet.....	186
Oversteer.....	108
Overview	
InControl mobile technology.....	159
Owner maintenance.....	184

P

Paddle shift.....	106
Paintwork	
cleaning.....	200

repair.....	200
Pairing a phone or device.....	155
Park assist.....	121
cleaning sensors and cameras.....	200
hands free parking.....	120
limitations of use.....	122
selecting.....	121
troubleshooting.....	123
Park assist options.....	121
Parking aids	
cleaning sensors and cameras.....	200
operating.....	115
rear camera.....	117, 119
reverse traffic detection.....	118
system fault.....	117
Parking brake.....	113
warning lamp.....	52
Parts.....	183
Passenger compartment fuse box.....	218
Passive alarm arming.....	16
Passive entry.....	8
Pedestrian protection system.....	243
after deployment.....	243
Perimeter alarm.....	15
Petrol	
fuel types.....	174
Petrol consumption.....	181
Petrol filler flap.....	179
Phone	
call volume.....	158
deleting the connected phone or device..	156
InControl.....	160
overview.....	157
safety.....	158
steering wheel controls.....	158
Phone compatibility.....	155
Playing a portable device.....	151
Points of interest (POI).....	169
Polishing the bodywork.....	201
Portable media	
Bluetooth wireless technology.....	155
connections.....	148
controls.....	150
Portable media pairing.....	155
Powered tow ball.....	92
Power sockets.....	86
Pressure checking (tyres)	
checking after a repair.....	233
Pressures	
tyres.....	224
Programming the timed climate.....	82
Progress control	
overview.....	137
settings.....	138
using the system.....	137
Progress control warning lamp.....	54
Puncture repair kit.....	231
instructions for use.....	232
repair procedure.....	232
safety.....	231
Q	
QR codes.....	9, 56, 80, 136, 139, 148, 160, 177
QR codes for smart phones	
instructional videos.....	3
Queue assist (ACC).....	130
R	
Radio frequency ID (RFID).....	75
Radio frequency regulations.....	256
Rain sensor.....	63
Rear camera	
hitch guidance.....	89
parking aids.....	117
reverse traffic detection.....	118
sensors.....	119
Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....	53
Rear lamp	
bulb changing.....	194
removal.....	194
Rear screen cleaning.....	201
Rear seats	
folding and raising.....	22
safety.....	22
Rear window blind.....	73
Recalling seat memory position.....	21
Recommended tyre pressures.....	230

- Recording
 - event data.....244
 - service data.....243
- Recovery
 - towing points.....241
 - transporting.....240
- Refuelling
 - diesel.....175
 - diesel fuel sulphur content.....175
 - ethanol.....174
 - fuel filler flap.....178
 - methanol.....175
 - MTBE.....175
 - octane rating.....174
 - petrol.....174
 - running out of fuel.....177
 - safety precautions.....174
- Reminder (seat belt).....31
- Remote control
 - care.....12
 - single locking.....13
 - smart key battery.....12
 - system transmitters.....255
- Removing stains.....202
- Removing the spare wheel.....238
- Repairing paintwork damage.....200
- Replacement tyres.....225
- Resetting the windows.....199
- Restarting the engine while moving.....101
- Resume speed and follow mode (ACC).....131
- Reverse parking aids.....115
 - rear camera.....119
 - reverse traffic detection.....118
 - system fault.....117
- Road sign recognition.....140
- Rolling re-start.....101
- Rolling roads.....185
- Rotary gear selector.....105
- Running-in.....183
- Running out of fuel.....177
- S**
- Safety
 - child safety locks.....33
 - fuel and refuelling.....174
 - seat belt checks.....31
 - seat belt pre-tensioners.....32
 - seat belt reminder warning.....31
 - seat belts.....30
 - seat belts warning lamp.....52
 - seats for larger children.....36
 - sitting correctly.....21
 - tyre care.....223
 - tyre pressures.....224
 - used engine oil.....186
 - using seat belts.....29
 - using the telephone.....158
- Safety in the garage
 - battery precautions.....186
 - electrical components.....186
 - engine fans.....186
 - exhaust gases.....186
 - hot components.....186
 - jacking.....186
- Satellite navigation
 - emergency contacts.....169
 - map screen.....167
 - menu.....166
 - operating.....164
 - overview.....164
 - points of interest (POI).....169
 - SD card.....164
 - set a selected destination.....169
 - settings.....167
 - guidance.....168
 - soft key icons.....170
 - voice commands.....153
 - where to?.....168
- Screen wash
 - check.....209
 - specification.....248
 - topping up.....209
- SD card
 - navigation system.....164
- Seat belts.....29
 - adjusting.....29
 - checks.....31
 - pre-tensioners.....32

- reminder warning.....31
- safety.....30
- warning lamp.....52
- Seats
 - child restraint check list.....34
 - child seat positioning.....35
 - child seats.....33
 - child seat tether straps.....38
 - climate.....81
 - electric front.....18
 - front head restraints.....24
 - heated.....81
 - manual front.....20
 - rear head restraints.....24
 - rear seat folding and raising.....22
 - rear seat safety.....22
 - recalling a memory position.....21
 - recommended child seats.....36
 - seat belts warning lamp.....52
 - sitting correctly.....21
- Securing luggage.....87
- Security.....15
 - alarm.....184
 - intrusion sensor.....16
 - tilt sensor.....16
 - automatic perimeter alarm.....16
 - automatic relocking and arming.....16
 - battery backed sounder.....15
 - closing mislock.....14
 - deactivating the alarm.....15
 - lock confirmation.....14
 - locking with the emergency key.....17
 - perimeter alarm.....15
 - single locking.....13
- Security sensors
 - fault.....16
- Selecting valet mode.....78
- Sensors
 - blockage.....69
- Sequential shift.....104, 106
- Servicing
 - airbags.....44
 - data recording.....243
 - Servicing requirements
 - interval indicator.....183
 - Set speed limit.....126
 - Setting a destination
 - navigation system.....169
 - Setting a timed climate program.....82
 - Settings
 - guidance
 - navigation system.....168
 - navigation system.....167
 - Settings menu.....47
 - display units.....49
 - Setting the heating and ventilation.....80
 - Setting the touch screen.....77
 - Side lamps warning lamp.....54
 - Sign recognition.....140
 - Silencing the alarm.....15
 - Sitting correctly.....21
 - Smart key
 - battery changing.....12
 - care.....12
 - single locking.....13
 - transmitters.....255
 - Smartphone
 - InControl.....160
 - InControl app.....159, 163
 - InControl protect link.....159
 - Smart phone video
 - QR codes.....3
 - Snow chains.....228
 - Soft keys
 - navigation system.....170
 - Solar attenuating glass.....75
 - SOS emergency call
 - InControl protect link.....159
 - Sound settings.....144
 - Spare wheel.....238
 - using wheel chocks.....238
 - Specifications
 - capacities.....253
 - dimensions.....251
 - engine.....247
 - ethanol.....174
 - fluids.....248

fuel tank capacity.....	180	Sunroof	
label locations.....	245	anti-trap protection.....	75
lubricants.....	248	reset.....	198
methanol.....	175	Supplementary restraint system (SRS)	
MTBE.....	175	airbag deployment.....	43
weight.....	249	airbag locations.....	40
Speed-dependent wipers.....	63	airbags maintenance.....	183
Speed limiting.....	126	airbag warning lamp.....	44, 53
Speedometer.....	46	curtain airbags.....	44
SRS.....	40	disabling passenger airbag.....	42
airbag warning lamp.....	53	front airbags.....	43
Stability control		side airbags.....	44
DSC.....	108	Surround cameras.....	124
switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	108	touch screen menu.....	124
switching on.....	109	Suspension	
switching off.....	108	adaptive dynamics.....	110
tracDSC.....	108	Switching off the engine.....	100
Starting after a collision.....	243	Switching on the ignition.....	100
Starting the engine.....	100	T	
keyless start backup.....	101	Tachometer.....	46
Stealth mode.....	61	Technical specifications	
Steering column		brake fluid.....	248
lock.....	9	capacities.....	253
vehicle recovery.....	9	dimensions.....	251
Steering wheel		engine.....	247
adjusting.....	27	engine coolant.....	248
AUTO position.....	28	engine oil.....	248
heated.....	28	radio frequency regulations.....	256
Steering wheel controls		washer fluid.....	248
speed limiter.....	126	weights.....	249
telephone.....	158	Telephone.....	157
Stolen vehicle		Bluetooth wireless technology.....	155
InControl secure.....	161	call volume.....	158
Stop/start		deleting the connected phone or device.....	156
activating.....	102	overview.....	157
deactivating.....	102–103	safety.....	158
Storage compartments.....	85	steering wheel controls.....	158
cup holders.....	85	Telephone compatibility.....	155
front cubby box.....	85	Telephone connecting.....	155
rear armrest.....	85	Telephone pairing.....	155
Storage compartments areas		Terms and conditions	
glove box.....	85	navigation.....	170
Sun blind.....	73	Tilt sensor.....	16

Timed climate.....	82	hitch guidance.....	89
additional remote controls.....	84	powered tow ball.....	92
programming.....	82	stability assist.....	89
remote control batteries.....	84	tow assist.....	90
using the remote control.....	83	tow ball accessories.....	95
Tinted front screen.....	75	tow ball options.....	89
Toll road payment.....	75	tow bar dimensions.....	96
Touch screen.....	202	tow bar mounting points.....	96
automatic recirculation.....	80	trailer electrical connections.....	93
button feedback.....	77	trailer reversing aid.....	90
clock.....	77	trailer sway.....	89
eco data.....	135	weights.....	88
extra features.....	78	Towing points.....	241
front climate control.....	79	tracDSC	
fuel burning heater.....	81	stability control.....	108
fuel economy facts.....	135	Tracking your vehicle	
general settings.....	77	InControl secure.....	161
heated and cooled seats.....	81	Traction control	
heated seats.....	81	switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	108
language selection.....	77	switching off.....	108
operating.....	77	switching on.....	109
shortcuts.....	77	tracDSC.....	108
surround cameras.....	124	Traffic sign recognition.....	140
system settings.....	77	Trailer	
touch screen care.....	77	electrical connections.....	93
valet mode.....	78	sway.....	89
volume presets.....	77	towing weights.....	88
Tow ball		Trailer direction indicators warning lamp.....	55
detachable.....	91–92	Trailer tow assist.....	90
options.....	89	Training	
powered tow ball.....	92	videos.....	9, 56, 80, 136, 139, 148, 160, 177
Tow ball accessories.....	95	Transmission	
Tow bar		automatic.....	104
mounting points.....	96	gear shift warning lamp.....	54
Towing		limp home mode.....	106
a trailer.....	94	manual.....	106
calculating weight.....	94	Transmitters	
checks		smart key.....	255
breakaway cable.....	94	Transporting the vehicle.....	240
lights.....	94	Trip computer.....	48
nose weight limit.....	94	average speed.....	48
tow ball.....	94	fuel consumption.....	48
detachable tow ball.....	91–92	fuel range.....	49
essential checks.....	94	reset.....	48

trip distance.....	49
Tyre pressure checking after a repair.....	233
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	229
tyre care.....	223
valves.....	225
warning lamp.....	54
Tyre pressures.....	230
Tyre repair kit	
checking pressures.....	233
repair procedure.....	232
safety information.....	231
using.....	232
Tyres	
age degradation.....	226
changing.....	230
flat spots.....	226
important information.....	239
Indian regulations.....	228
pressure check.....	229
pressures.....	224
recommended tyre pressure look-up.....	230
repair kit.....	231
repair kit use.....	232
repair procedure.....	232
replacements.....	225
snow chains.....	228
speed ratings.....	223
temporary use spare.....	230
TPMS.....	229
warning lamp.....	54
tyre care.....	223
tyre repair safety.....	231
tyre wall markings.....	222
use of spare tyre.....	239
valves.....	225
vehicle loading.....	230
wall markings.....	222
winter.....	226

U

Under bonnet covers.....	187
Understeer.....	108
Unlocking.....	13
all doors.....	6
driver's door.....	6
entry and exit mode.....	28
global opening.....	6, 9
keyless entry.....	8
luggage compartment.....	10
mode.....	6
multi point entry.....	6, 8
passive entry.....	8
single point entry.....	6, 8
USB devices	
connecting multiple devices.....	151
Used engine oil.....	186
Using adaptive cruise control.....	128
Using cruise control.....	127
Using the parking aids.....	115
Using the spare tyre	
important information.....	239
Using the touch screen.....	76
Using wheel chocks.....	238

V

Valet mode.....	78
deselecting.....	78
Vehicle alarm.....	184
Vehicle battery	
battery monitoring system.....	210
connecting jump leads.....	210
replacing.....	213
warning symbols.....	210
Vehicle cleaning	
airbag covers.....	202
alloy wheels.....	200
automatic car wash.....	200
engine compartment.....	200
interior.....	201–202
rear screen.....	201
sunroof.....	201
washer jets.....	198
Vehicle data recording.....	244
Vehicle loading tyre pressures.....	230
Vehicle location	
InControl secure.....	161
Vehicle recovery	
steering column lock.....	9

towing points.....	241
transporting the vehicle.....	240
Vehicle testing on rolling roads.....	185
Video	
instructions.9, 56, 80, 136, 139, 148, 160, 177	
VIN number.....	245
Voice control.....	153
navigation POI categories.....	153
Volume	
telephone.....	158

W

Warning lamps.....	51
ABS.....	53
ACC follow mode.....	53
adaptive front lighting system (AFS).....	53
airbags.....	44, 53
automatic speed limiter.....	53
battery charge.....	52
brake.....	51–52
critical warning message.....	51
cruise control.....	54
diesel glow plugs.....	52
DSC active.....	53
engine/transmission.....	52
engine temperature.....	51
external temperature.....	53
forward alert.....	55
gear shift warning lamp.....	54
headlamp high beam.....	54
high beam assist.....	54
indicators.....	54
intelligent stop/start (green).....	54
lamp test.....	51
lane departure (green).....	54
lane departure (red).....	52
low fuel.....	53
low oil pressure.....	51
parking brake.....	52
progress control system.....	54
rear fog lamps.....	53
seat belt.....	52
side lights.....	54
trailer direction indicators.....	55
tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	54
Warning messages.....	47
Washer jets.....	198
Washer reservoir	
capacity.....	253
Washers.....	62
fluid specification.....	209
fluid top up.....	209
headlamps.....	64
Washing	
automatic car wash.....	200
exterior paintwork.....	200
removing grease.....	201
removing stains.....	202
removing tar.....	201
soft top.....	201
Water in fuel.....	177
Web browsing	
InControl connection.....	162
Weights	
gross vehicle weights.....	249
roof load.....	249
roof rack weight.....	249
tow ball/hitch.....	88
towing.....	88
vehicle weights.....	249
Wheel changing	
important information.....	239
locking wheel nuts.....	239
recommended process.....	236
safety warnings.....	235
spare wheel.....	238
temporary spare wheel.....	238
tilt sensor.....	236
use of spare tyre.....	239
Wheel chocks use.....	238
Wheels and tyres	
age degradation.....	226
changing a tyre.....	230
checking the pressures after a repair.....	233
flat spots.....	226
Indian regulations.....	228
pressures.....	224

puncture repair.....	231
puncture repair safety.....	231
repair kit.....	231
repair kit use.....	232
repair procedure.....	232
replacements.....	225
snow chains.....	228
temporary use spare.....	230
TPMS.....	229
TPMS warning lamp.....	54
tyre care.....	223
tyre speed ratings.....	223
tyre wall markings.....	222
valves.....	225
winter tyres.....	226
Wheel spin.....	108
Where to	
navigation system.....	168
Wi-Fi	
InControl connection.....	162
Windows	
anti-trap protection.....	74
operation.....	73
reset.....	199
solar attenuating.....	75
sunroof reset.....	198
Winter park position.....	198
Winter tyres.....	226
Wipers.....	62
Wipers and washers.....	62
drip wipe.....	63
fluid level.....	209
rain sensor.....	63
speed-dependent mode.....	63
Wireless technology	
Bluetooth.....	155
X	
Xenon headlamps.....	188

DRIVER CONTROLS

Note: Numbers in brackets refer to the page number where extra information can be found.

1. InControl Protect- Breakdown call (159).
2. Sunroof (73).
3. Rear screen sun blind (73).
4. Sunroof blind (73).
5. InControl Protect- SOS Emergency call (159).
6. Front reading lamp (60).
7. Front interior courtesy lamp (60).
8. Exterior lamps and Trip computer controls(56/48).
9. Downshift gear paddle (104).
10. Instrument panel and Message centre (46).
11. Heated steering wheel (28).
12. Upshift gear paddle (104).
13. Wipers/washers controls(62).
14. Touch screen **HOME** menu (76).
15. Touch screen **General settings** menu or Park assist (76 or 121).
16. Audio mute or Parking aids (76 or 115).
17. Touch screen on/off or Surround camera (76 or 124).
18. Media mode selection (143).
19. **Media** menu (143).
20. Telephone (157).
21. Navigation or audio menu (164 or 76).
22. Hazard warning lamps.
23. Heating, ventilation, and Air conditioning controls (79).
24. Audio on/off and volume control (143).
25. Rotary gear selector (104). For vehicles with a Manual gear selector (106).
26. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (113).
27. Progress control (137).
28. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) (108).
29. Driving modes (135).
30. Intelligent stop/start (102).
31. Engine START/STOP (100).
32. Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (127 or 128).
33. Steering wheel adjuster (27).
34. Horn: Press to operate.
35. Audio controls, Voice control, and Telephone (143/153/144).
36. Halogen headlamp levelling (58).
37. Interior illumination control (61).
38. Bonnet release (186).
39. Lane departure warning (141).
40. Luggage compartment lid release/open (10).
41. Driver's seat position memory (20).
42. Doors lock/unlock (13).
43. Rear window isolator (73).
44. Window controls (73).
45. Mirror adjustment/power-folding mirrors (65).

